As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 🕮 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 90

## A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

| | |
|---|---|
| **⚠DANGER** | You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions. |
| **⚠WARNING** | You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions. |
| **⚠CAUTION** | You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions. |

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.
This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## Vehicle Data Recordings*

This vehicle records the following information as data when the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) is operated.

- Operational status of each function of the CMBS
- Accelerator / brake pedal operation
- Vehicle speed
- Information such as distance and relative speed of the target identified by the CMBS activated

Honda may obtain and use the recorded data for the purpose of technical diagnosis and research and development of Honda vehicles.
The CMBS does not record images or audio inside the vehicle.
Special tools are required to review or remove data recorded by CMBS.

Disclosure of data
Honda will not disclose or provide the acquired data to third parties with data recorded by CMBS except in the following cases:

- When the owner of the vehicle consents
- When required by law, court order, or similar legally enforceable request
- When the data has been processed to de-identify/anonymise the vehicles/users, such as when aggregate data is provided to research institutions

* Not available on all models

## Owner's Manual Application Terms and Conditions

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner's manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner's manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner's manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver owner's manual updates to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the owner's manual application and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner's manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the owner's manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

## System Updates Terms and Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. You may elect to automatically download and install these updates in your settings, or, you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain a log of the updates or alerts that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application.
See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:
Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.


**Safe Driving** P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36 Seat Belts P. 40 Airbags P. 52

**Instrument Panel** P. 91

Indicators P. 92 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 112

**Controls** P. 165

Clock P. 166 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 167
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 193
Interior Convenience Items P. 225

**Features** P. 245

Audio System P. 246 Colour Audio P. 249
General Information on the Audio System P. 396

**Driving** P. 407

Before Driving P. 408 Towing a Trailer P. 412 When Driving P. 413
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 528 Refueling P. 530

**Maintenance** P. 535

Before Performing Maintenance P. 536 Oil Monitor System P. 539
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 573
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 587 Cleaning P. 589

**Handling the Unexpected** P. 597

Tools P. 598 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 599
Overheating P. 619 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 621
If You Cannot Open the Boot P. 641

**Information** P. 643

Specifications P. 644 Identification Numbers P. 647

# Contents


Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Child Safety P. 64
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 89
Safety Labels P. 90

Safe Driving P. 35

Instrument Panel P. 91

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 183
Security System P. 185
Windows P. 187
Sunroof* P. 191
Mirrors P. 211
Seats P. 215
Climate Control System P. 238

Controls P. 165

Display Audio P. 304
Audio Error Messages P. 394

Features P. 245

Honda Sensing P. 444
Braking P. 511
Parking Your Vehicle P. 521
Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions P. 533
Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 534

Driving P. 407

Maintenance Schedule P. 546
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 550
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 563
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 575
Battery P. 581
Remote Transmitter Care P. 584
Accessories and Modifications P. 595

Maintenance P. 535

Handling the Unexpected P. 597

Engine Does Not Start P. 608
If the Battery Is Dead P. 614
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 617
Fuses P. 627
Emergency Towing P. 639
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 640

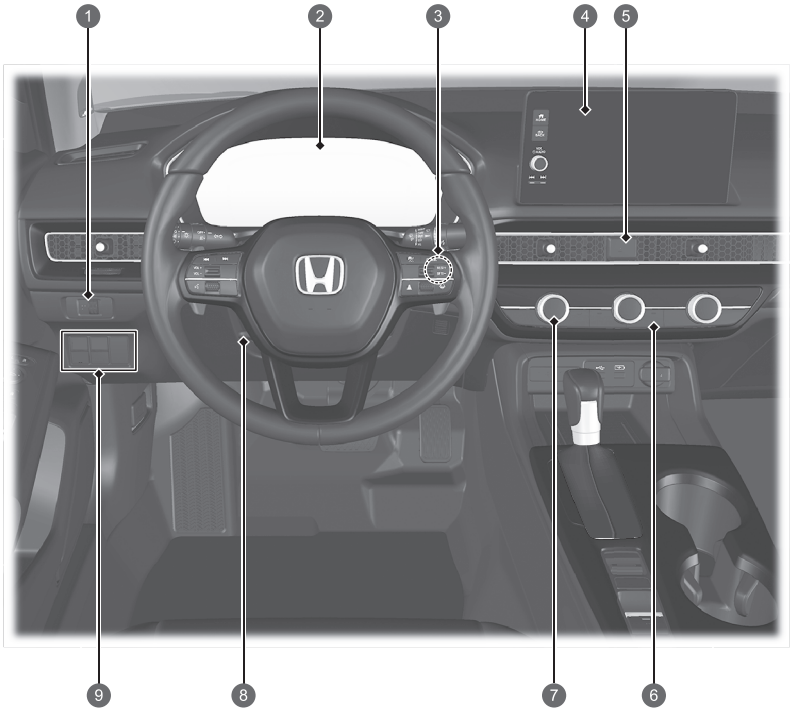
Information P. 643

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 648
TCU Open Source Licence* P. 656
Open Source Licence P. 657

Index P. 658

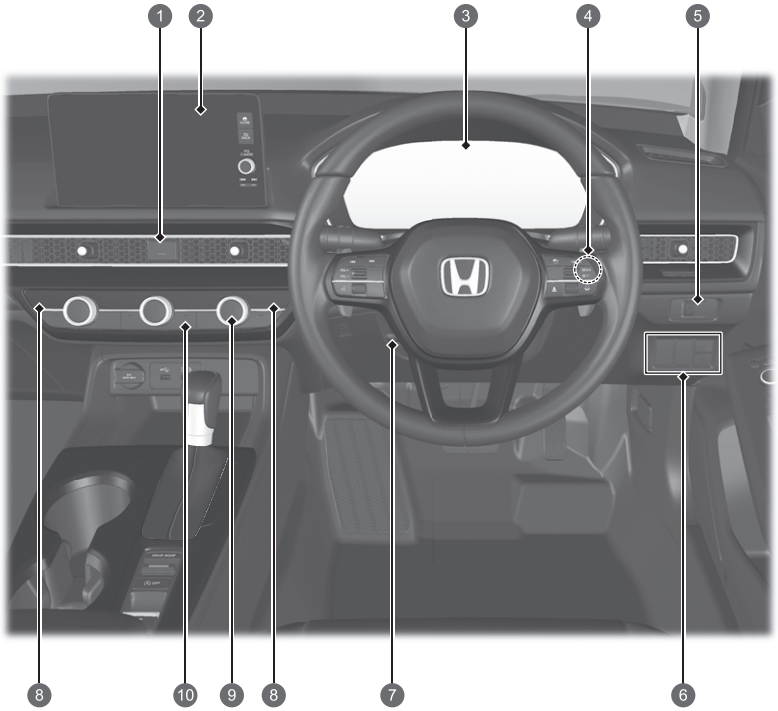
# Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type




1. **Brightness Control** P. 208, 209
2. **System Indicators** P. 92
   **Gauges** P. 112
   **Driver Information Interface** P. 115, 143, 146
3. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 193
4. **Audio System** P. 246
   **Navigation System*** See the Navigation System Manual
5. **Hazard Warning Button**
6. **Rear Demister** P. 207
7. **Climate Control System** P. 238
8. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 210
9. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 435
   **Safety Support Switch** P. 451, 499
   **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 201

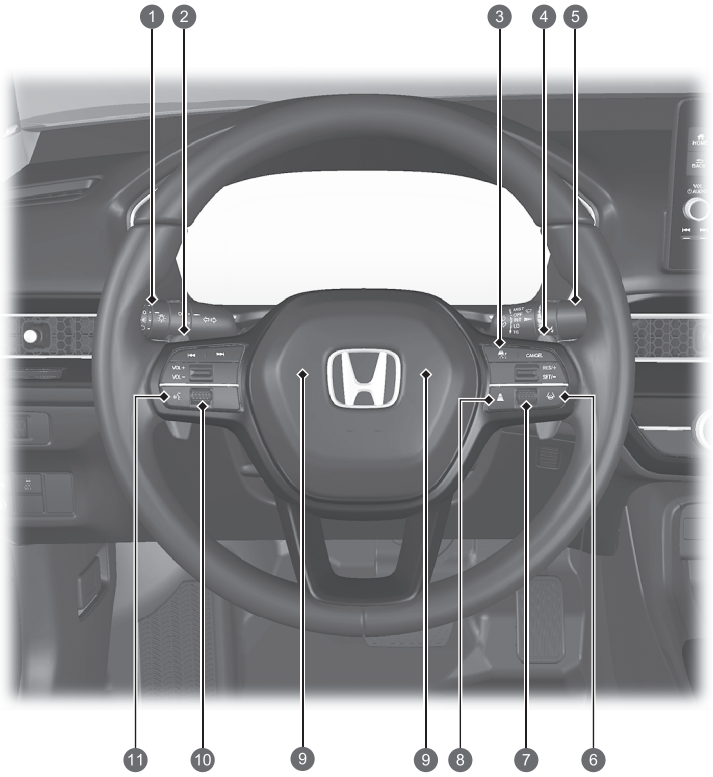
Right-hand Drive Type




1. **Hazard Warning Button**
2. **Audio System** P. 246
   **Navigation System***
   See the Navigation System Manual
3. **System Indicators** P. 92
   **Gauges** P. 112
   **Driver Information Interface** P. 115, 143, 146
4. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 193
5. **Brightness Control** P. 208, 209
6. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 435
   **Safety Support Switch** P. 451, 499
   **Parking Sensor System Button*** P. 524
7. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 210
8. **Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 237
9. **Climate Control System** P. 238
10. **Rear Demister** P. 207
    **Heated Door Mirror Button*** P. 207

* Not available on all models

# Visual Index




❶ **Wipers/Washers*** P. 205
**Headlights/Turn Signals*** P. 196, 198
**Fog Lights*** P. 200
**LaneWatch*** P. 439

❷ **Paddle Shifter (Shift down)*** P. 428

❸ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons** P. 460

❹ **Paddle Shifter (Shift up)*** P. 428

❺ **Headlights/Turn Signals*** P. 196, 198
**Wipers/Washers*** P. 205
**Fog Lights*** P. 200
**LaneWatch*** P. 439

❻ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** P. 487

❼ **Right Selector Wheel*** P. 146

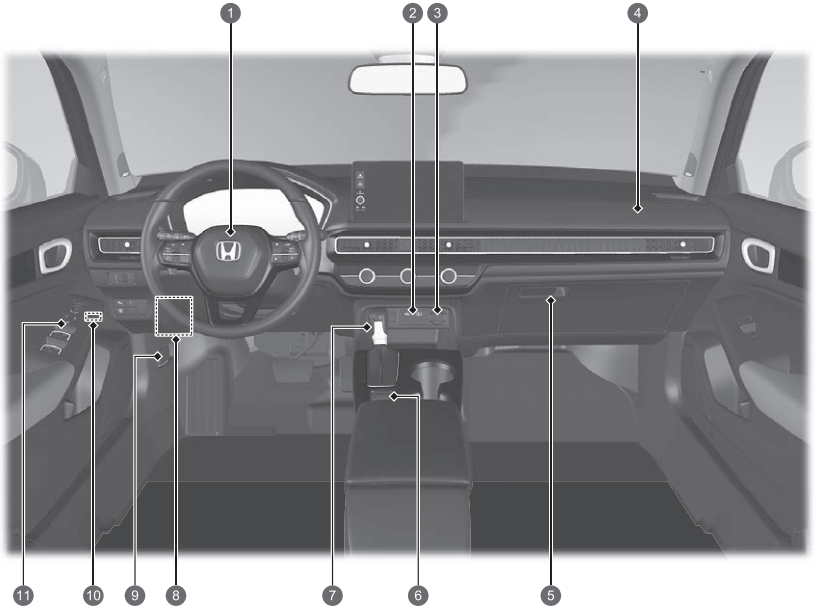
❽ **Interval Button** P. 477

❾ **Horn (Press an area around .)**

❿ **Left Selector Wheel** P. 115, 308

⓫ **Hands-Free Telephone Voice Control Button*** P. 284
**(Home) Button*** P. 115, 308
**Audio Remote Controls** P. 251, 308

Left-hand Drive Type

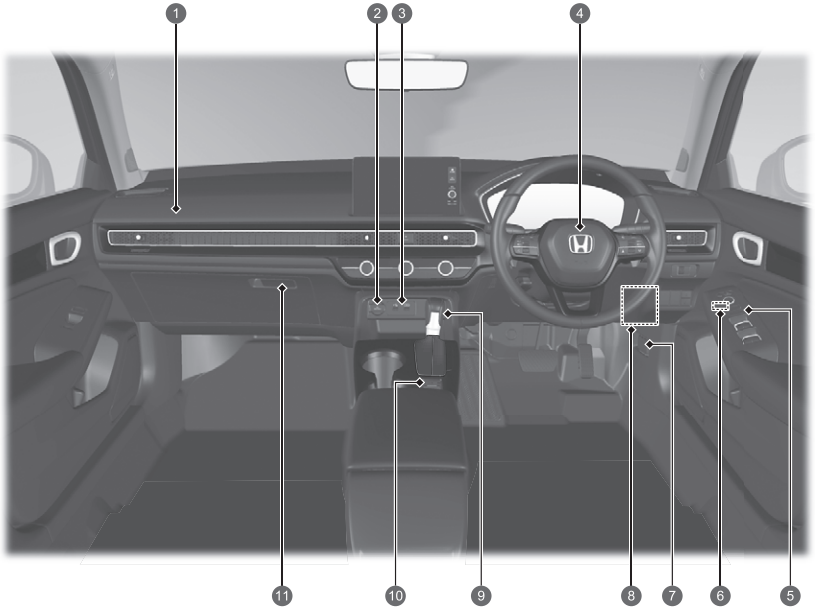



1. Driver's Front Airbag P. 54
2. USB Port(s) P. 250, 307
3. Accessory Power Socket P. 232
4. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 54
5. Glove Box P. 227
6. ECON Button* P. 430
   Drive Mode Switch* P. 431
   Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 511
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 515
7. Shift Lever P. 422, 425
8. Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 632
9. Bonnet Release Handle P. 551
10. Boot Opener P. 183
11. Door Mirror Controls P. 213
    Master Door Lock Switch P. 180
    Power Window Switches P. 187

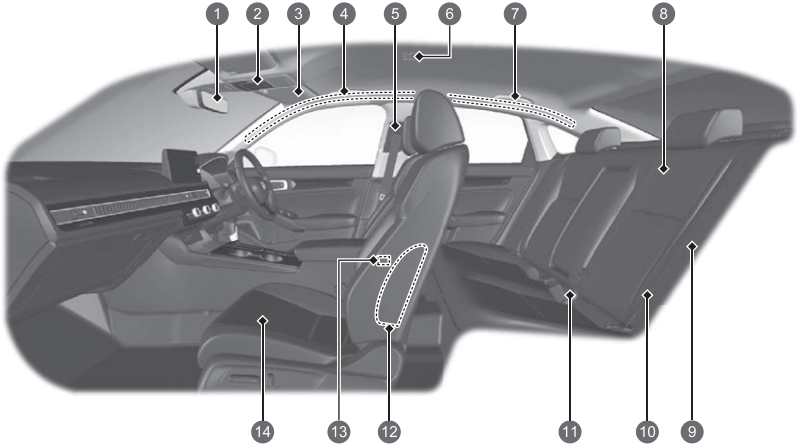
* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



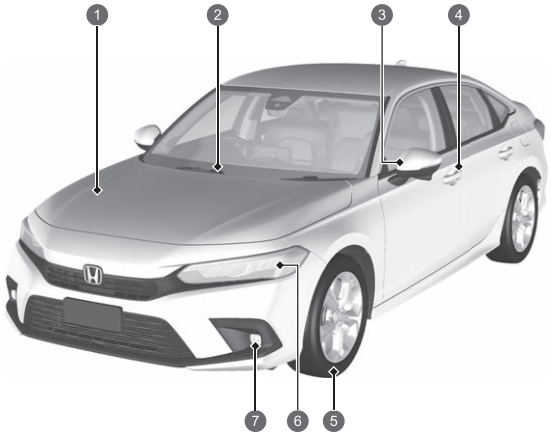

1. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 54
2. Accessory Power Socket P. 232
3. USB Port(s) P. 250, 307
4. Driver's Front Airbag P. 54
5. Door Mirror Controls P. 213
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 180
   Power Window Switches P. 187
6. Boot Opener P. 183
7. Bonnet Release Handle P. 551
8. Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 632
9. Shift Lever P. 422, 425
10. ECON Button* P. 430
    Drive Mode Switch* P. 431
    Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 511
    Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 515
11. Glove Box P. 227



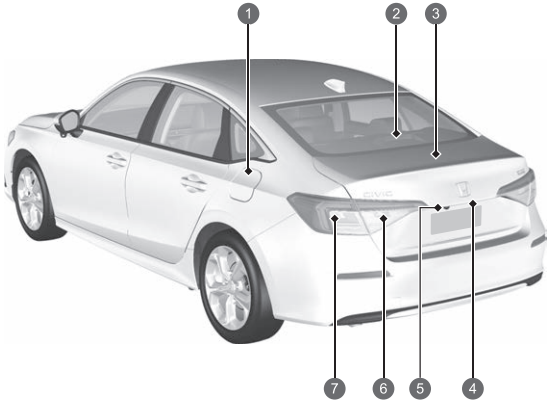

❶ **Rearview Mirror** P. 211
❷ **Map Lights** P. 226
❸ **Sun Visors**
**Vanity Mirrors**
❹ **Side Curtain Airbags*** P. 60
❺ **Seat Belts** P. 40
❻ **Ceiling Light** P. 225
❼ **Grab Handle**
**Coat Hook*** P. 230
❽ **Rear Seat** P. 219
❾ **Rear Side Airbags*** P. 57
❿ **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 82
**Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System** P. 84
⓫ **Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems** P. 78
⓬ **Front Side Airbags** P. 57
⓭ **USB Ports*** P. 250, 307
⓮ **Front Seat** P. 215

* Not available on all models

# Visual Index




1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 550
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 205, 573
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 213
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 198, 566
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 171
5. Tyres P. 575, 599
6. Headlights P. 196, 566
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 196, 200, 566
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 198, 565
7. Fog Lights* P. 200, 566

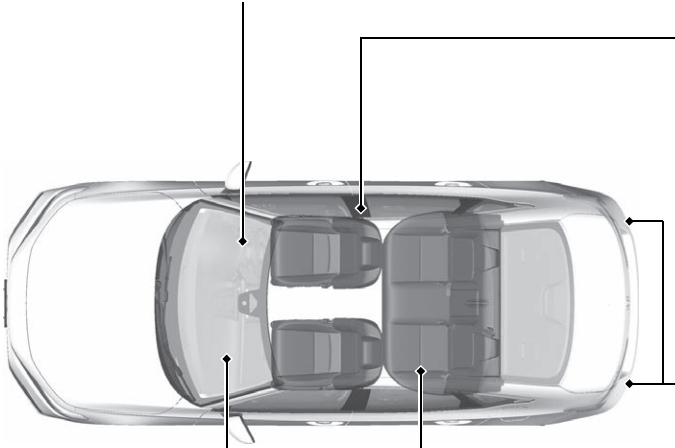



1. How to Refuel P. 531
2. High-Mount Brake Light P. 570
3. Opening/Closing the Boot P. 183
4. Rear Licence Plate Light P. 196, 570
5. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 528
6. Taillights P. 196, 569
   Back-Up Lights P. 569
7. Taillights P. 196, 567
   Brake Lights P. 196, 567
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 198, 567

# Safe Driving P. 35

## Before Driving Checklist P. 39

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



## Seat Belts P. 40

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 89

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Child Safety P. 64

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Airbags P. 52

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

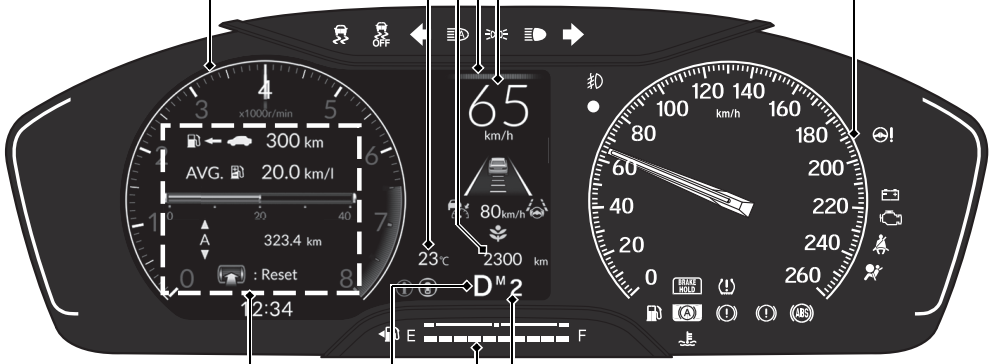


* Not available on all models

# Instrument Panel P. 91

## Gauges P. 112/Driver Information Interface P. 115, 143, 146/System Indicators P. 92

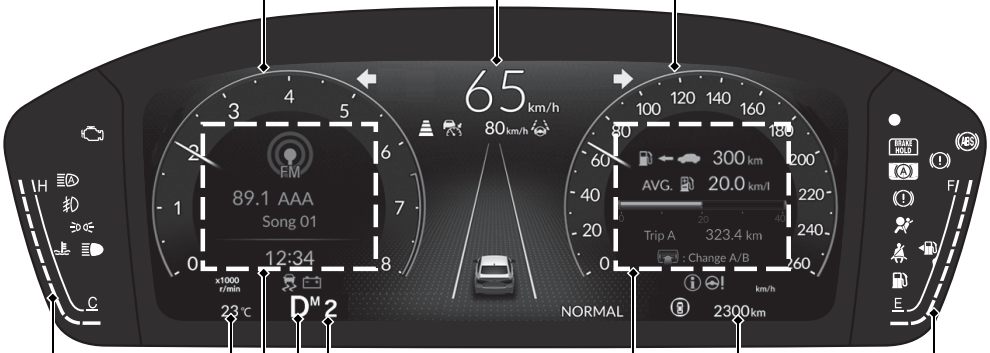
Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

● You can change the gauge design.

➔ **Change gauge design** P. 164




Speedometer P. 112

Tachometer P. 112

Temperature Gauge P. 113

Outside Temperature P. 114

**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator P. 98

Odometer P. 113

Fuel Gauge P. 113

Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area) P. 146

Shift Position Indicator/ Transmission System Indicator P. 98

Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area) P. 143

* Not available on all models

# Controls P. 165

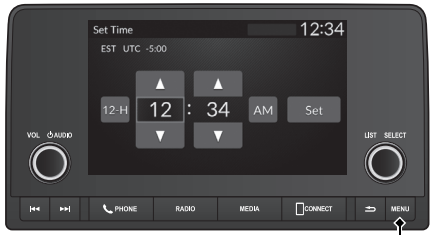
## Clock P. 166

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.
P. 320

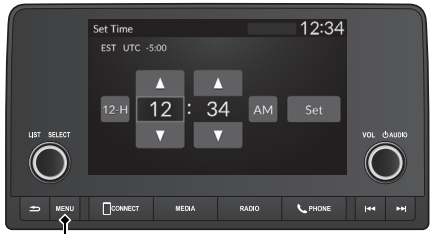
Models with colour audio system

Left-hand Drive Type




**MENU** Button

Right-hand Drive Type

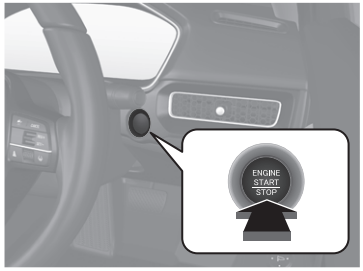



**MENU** Button

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Clock Settings**.
3. Select **Automatic Time**, then select **OFF**.
4. Select **Set Time**.
5. Select **12-H/24-H** to change 12 or 24 hour clock.
6. Select ▲ or ▼.
7. Select **Set** to set the time.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 193

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



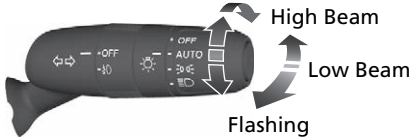

## Turn Signals P. 198

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights P. 196

Light Control Switches

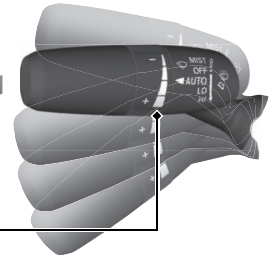


# Wipers and Washers

P. 205

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring*
−: Low sensitivity*1
: Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2
+: High sensitivity*1
: Higher speed, more sweeps*2




**MIST**
**OFF**
**AUTO***1: Wiper speed varies automatically
**INT***2: Low speed with intermittent
**LO**: Low speed wipe
**HI**: High speed wipe

*1:Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2:Models with manual intermittent operation

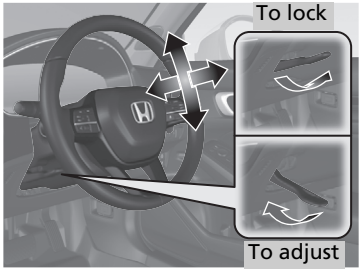
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

# Steering Wheel

P. 210

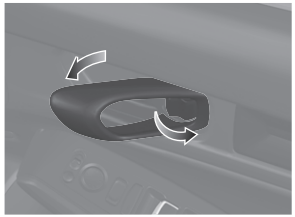
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.




# Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 180

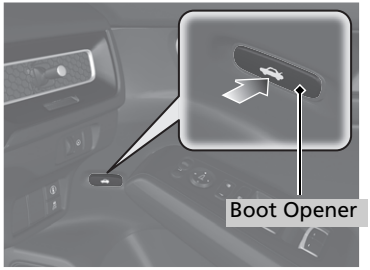
- Pull either driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



# Boot

P. 183

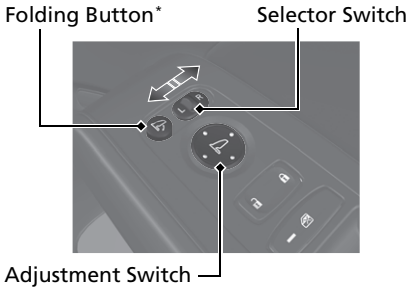
- Press and hold the boot opener on the driver's door to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the remote to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button* on the boot lid to unlock and open the boot.



## Power Door Mirrors

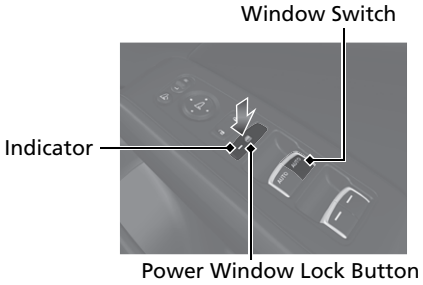
P. 213

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.




## Power Windows P. 187

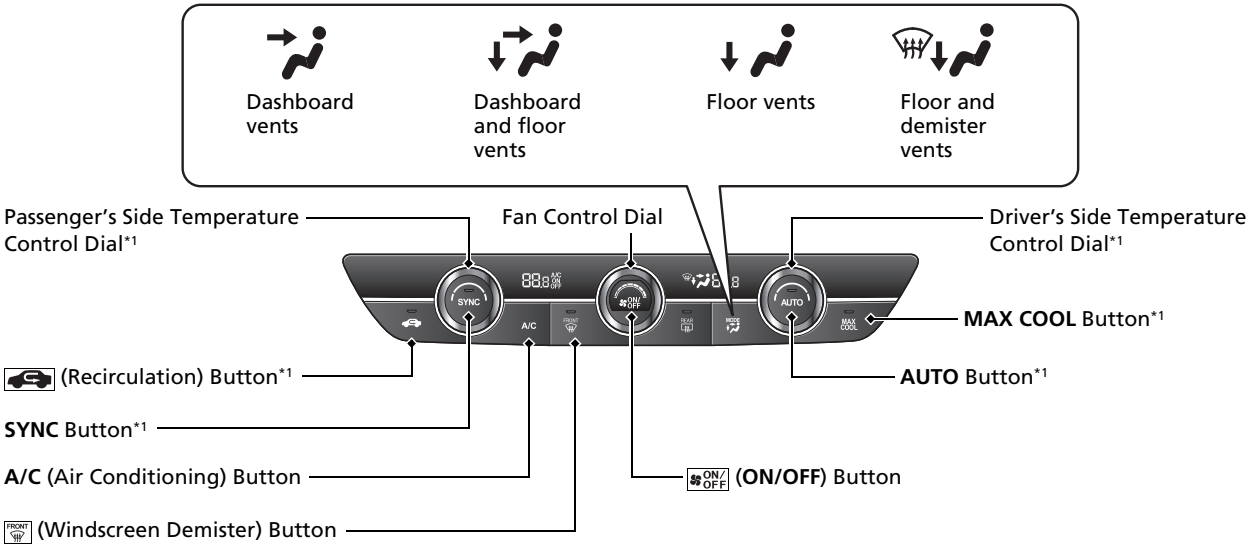
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



# Climate Control System P. 238

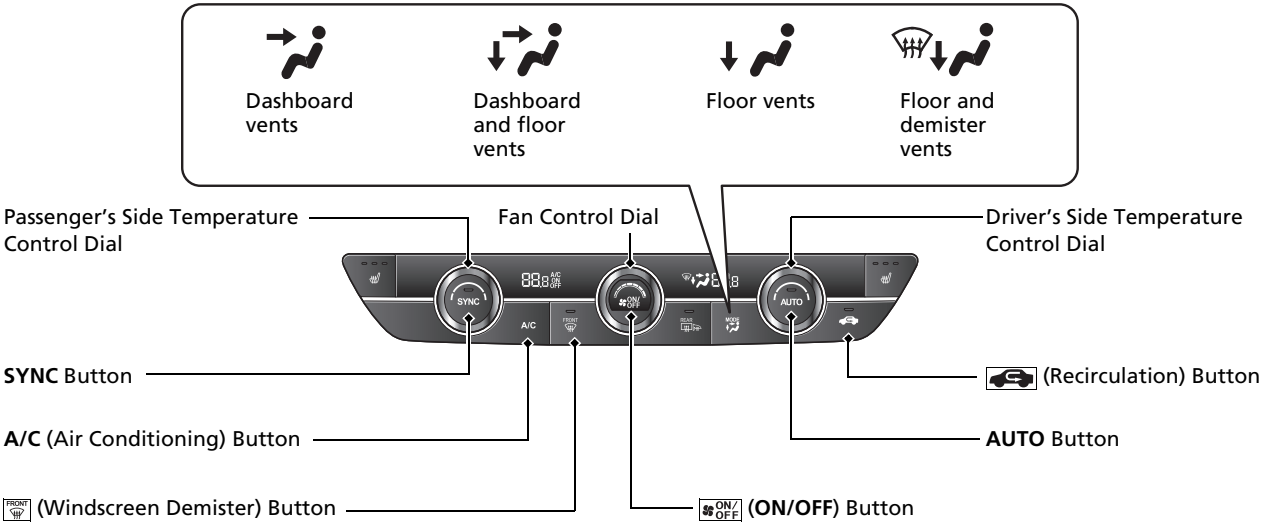
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

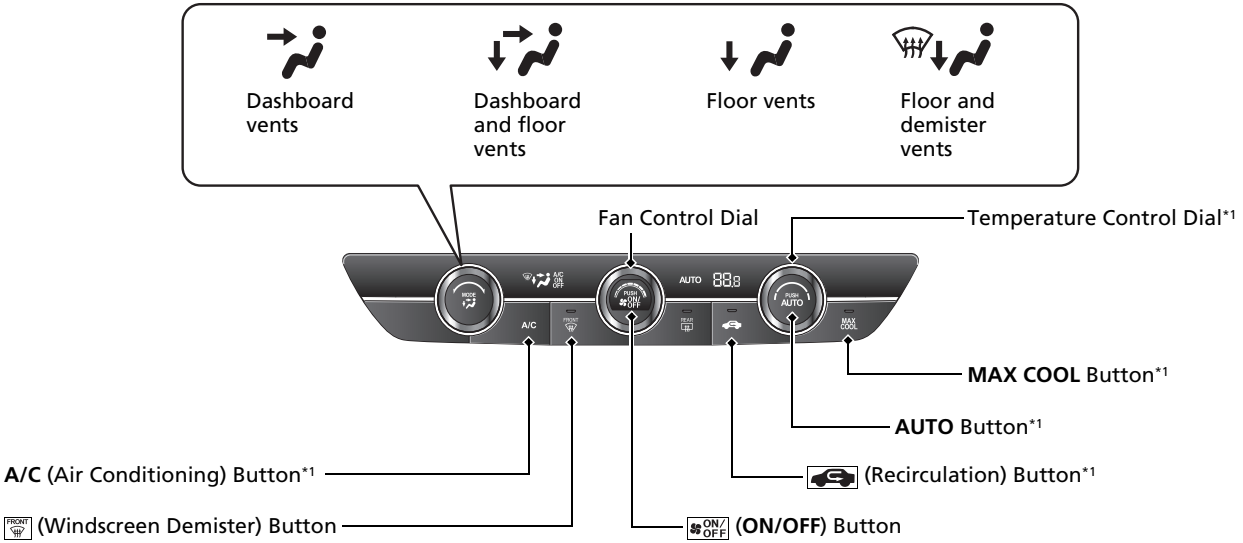
Models with SYNC button and MAX COOL button




*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

Models with SYNC button



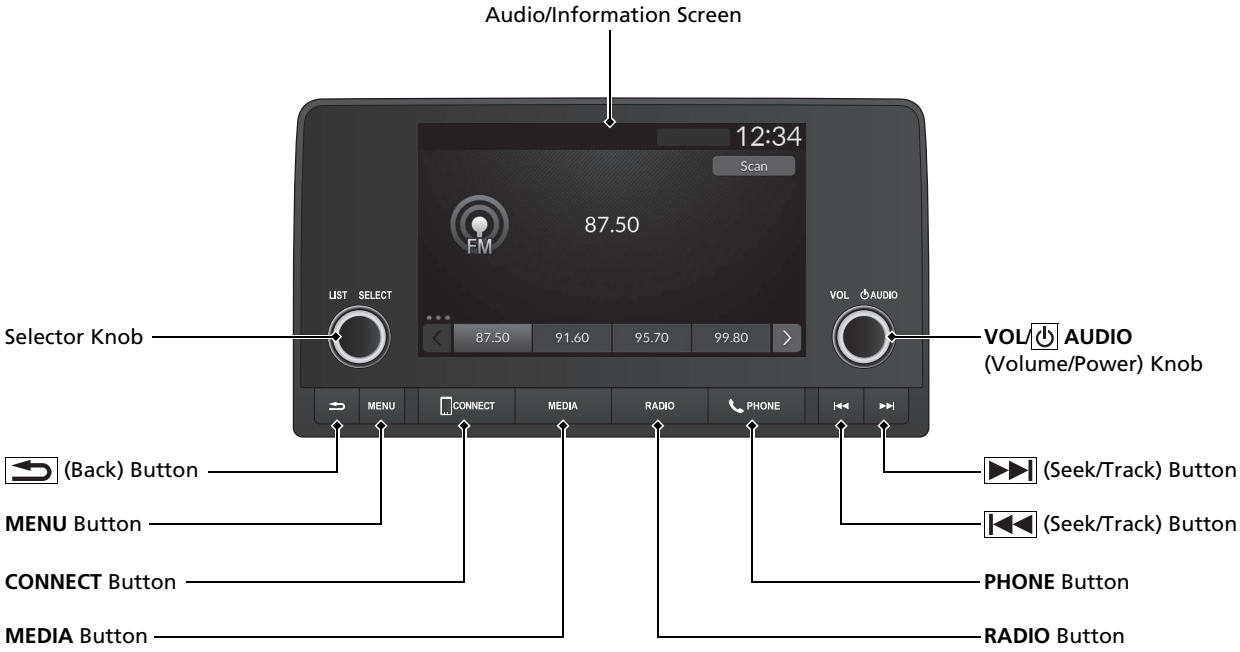



*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

# Features P. 245

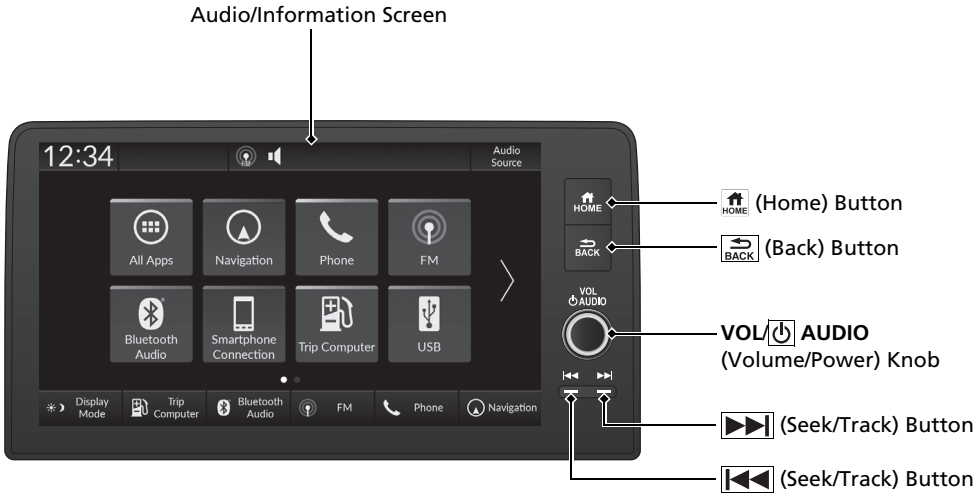
## Audio System P. 246

Models with colour audio P. 249



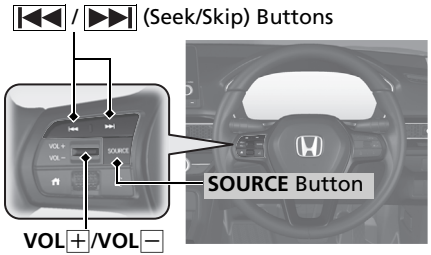
Models with Display Audio P. 304

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



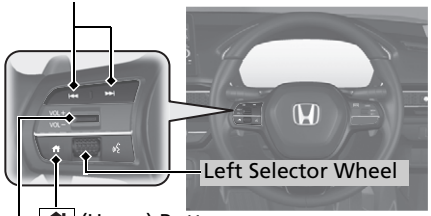
# Audio Remote Controls

Models with colour audio system P. 251

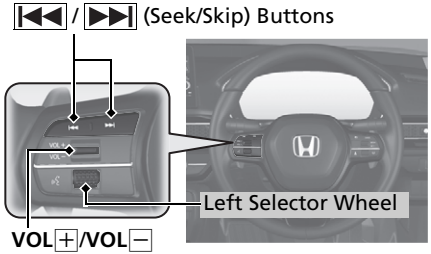



- **SOURCE** Button
  Press to cycle through the audio modes as follows:
  FM→AM→USB/iPod/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto→*Bluetooth*® Audio
- **VOL+** / **VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio:
  Press / to change the preset radio station. Press and hold / to change the strong station.
  iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
  Press / to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio:
  Press and hold / to change a folder/group.

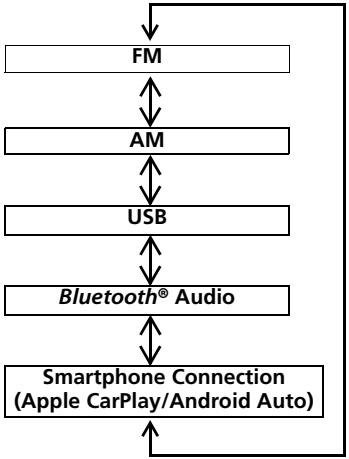
Models with Display Audio P. 308
Models with A-type meter




Models with B-type meter




- **VOL+** / **VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio:
  Press / to change the preset radio station. Press and hold / to change the strong station.
  iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
  Press / to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB flash drive:
  Press and hold / to change a folder.
- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode*1
  Press the (Home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.
  Roll up or down:
  To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:



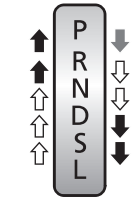

*1: Models with A-type meter

# Driving P. 407

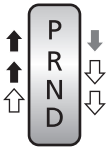
## Continuously Variable Transmission

P. 421, 422, 425

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**




Models without paddle shifter

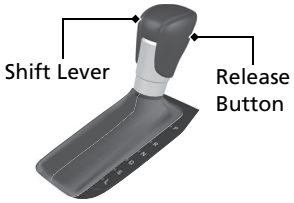



Models with paddle shifter

Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.




**P** **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

**R** **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

**N** **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

**D** **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving.

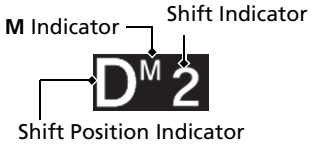
Models with paddle shifters
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode).

**S** **Drive (S)***
Used:
- For better acceleration.
- To increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.

**L** **Low***
- Used to further increase engine braking.
- Used when going up or down hills.

### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 428

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.




### When the transmission is in D with SPORT mode

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

### When the transmission is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.





* Not available on all models

## CMBS On and Off P. 451

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

## VSA On and Off P. 435

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

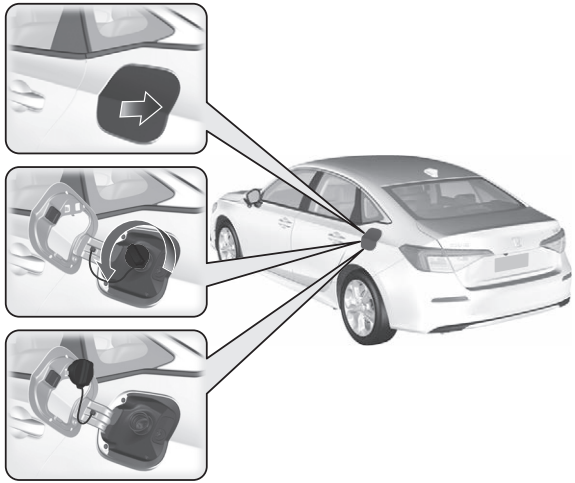
## Deflation Warning System* P. 437

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- An calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

# Refueling P. 530

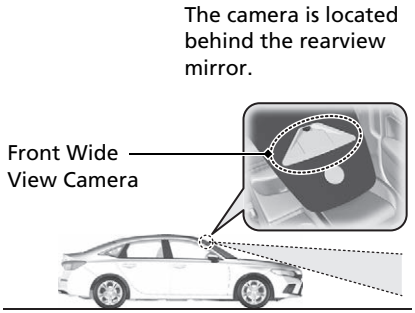
| | |
|---|---|
| **Fuel recommendation:** | Thai models<br>**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**<br>Except Thai models<br>**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher** |
| **Fuel tank capacity:** | **47 L** |

1. Unlock the driver's door.
2. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
3. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
4. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
5. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Honda Sensing P. 444

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.




## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 447

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 460

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 482

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System P. 496

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## Lead Car Departure Notification System*

P. 504

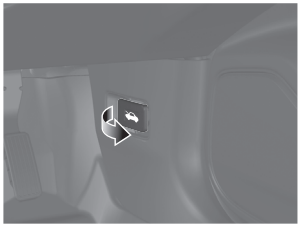
Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

# Maintenance P. 535

## Under the Bonnet P. 550

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



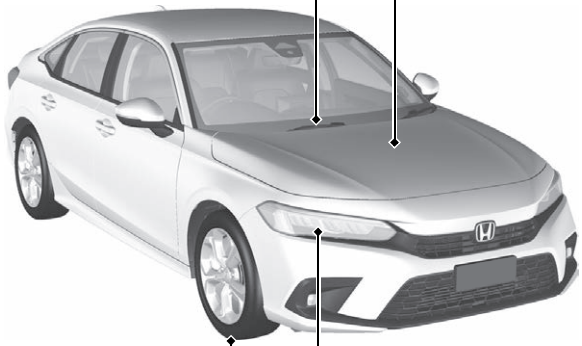
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P. 573

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



## Tyres P. 575

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights P. 563

- Inspect all lights regularly.



* Not available on all models

# Handling the Unexpected P. 597

## Flat Tyre P. 599

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.



## Engine Won't Start

P. 608

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.




## Overheating P. 619

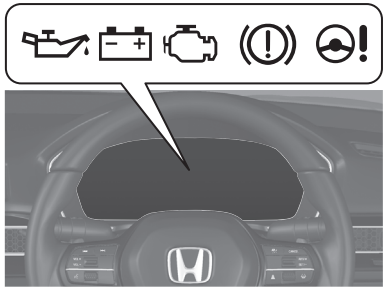
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Indicators Come On

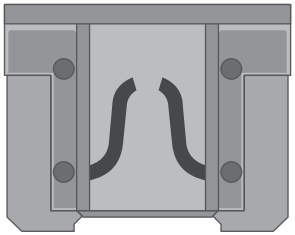
P. 621

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P. 627

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing

P. 639

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

**A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.




**Q** **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

**A** The shift lever should be moved to P.



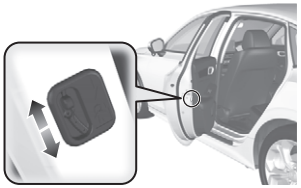

**Q** **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518

**Q** **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



**Q** **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

**Q** **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

**A** The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

**Q** Models with walk away auto lock
**Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

**A** The beeper sounds if the keyless remote or card key* has moved outside the walk away auto lock operating range before all doors completely close.
➡ **Locking the doors (Walk Away Auto Lock)** P. 174

**Q** **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

**A** The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

**Q** **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

**A** Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

---

**Q** Models with deflation warning system
**I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?**

**A** The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.
➡ **Deflation Warning System*** ➡P. 437

---

**Q** **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

**A**
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in [P] or [N]. If so, select any other position.

---

**Q** **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

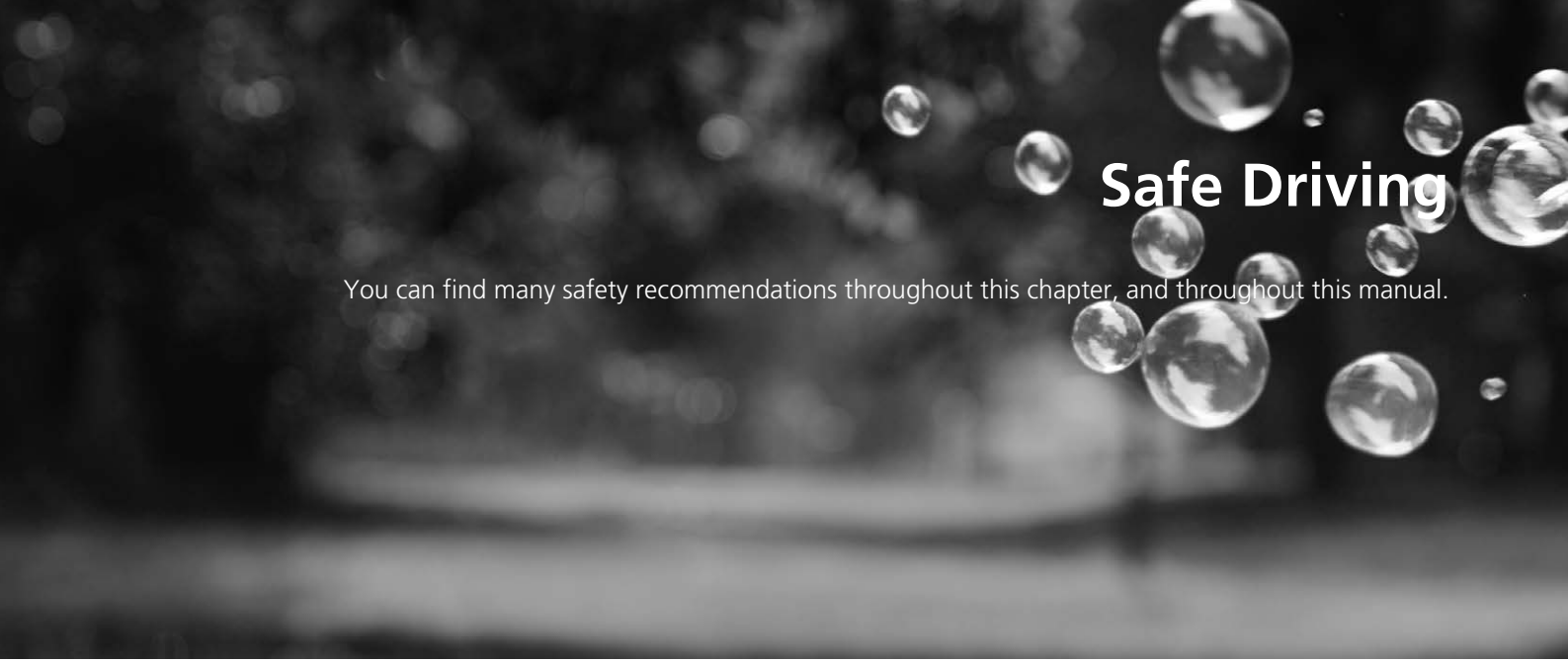
**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

Q Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher is recommended.**
**Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 90 or lower on this vehicle?**

A Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 90 can lead to engine damage.



# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.


**For Safe Driving**
- Important Safety Precautions ..... 36
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features ..... 38
- Safety Checklist ..... 39

**Seat Belts**
- About Your Seat Belts ..... 40
- Fastening a Seat Belt ..... 46
- Seat Belt Inspection ..... 50
- Anchorage Points ..... 51

**Airbags**
- Airbag System Components ..... 52
- Types of Airbags ..... 54
- Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 54
- Side Airbags ..... 57
- Side Curtain Airbags* ..... 60
- Airbag System Indicators ..... 62
- Airbag Care ..... 63

**Child Safety**
- Protecting Child Passengers ..... 64
- Safety of Infants and Small Children ... 67
- Safety of Larger Children ..... 86

**Exhaust Gas Hazard**
- Carbon Monoxide Gas ..... 89

**Safety Labels**
- Label Locations ..... 90


* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

**■ Always wear your seat belt**
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

**■ Restrain all children**
Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

**■ Be aware of airbag hazards**
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

**■ Don't drink and drive**
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

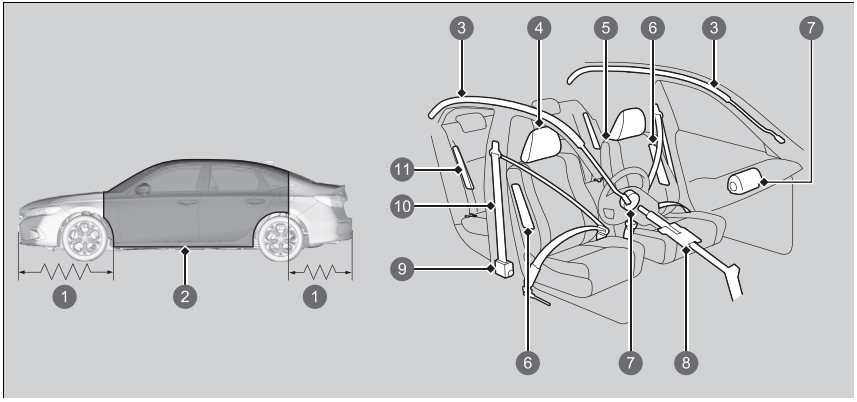
Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

# Your Vehicle's Safety Features






❶ Crush Zones
❷ Safety Cage
❸ Side Curtain Airbags*
❹ Head Restraints
❺ Seats and Seat-Backs
❻ Front Side Airbags
❼ Front Airbags
❽ Collapsible Steering Column
❾ Seat Belt Tensioners
❿ Seat Belts
⓫ Rear Side Airbags*

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.



* Not available on all models

# Safety Checklist

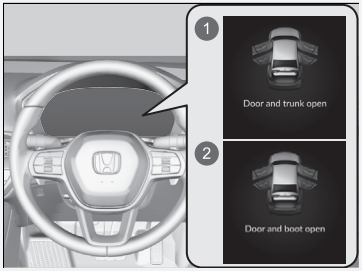
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  **Seats** P. 215
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 222
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
  **Child Safety** P. 64

## Safety Checklist

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

**Warnings** P. 130, 162




❶ Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
❷ Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers



About Your Seat Belts

**⚠WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 82

About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.



*Continued*

### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder




### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

**Seat Belt Reminder**

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

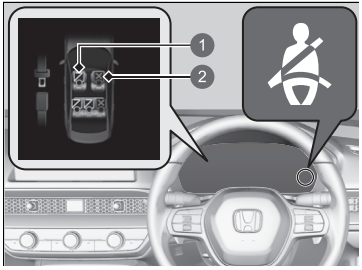
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*Continued*




❶ Fastened
❷ Unlatched

■ **Rear seats***

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface and indicator notify you if any of the rear seat belts are unlatched.

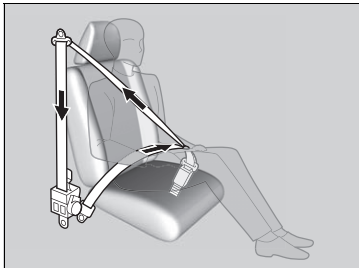
The display appears when:

- Rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastened or unfastened their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened while driving.

 * Not available on all models

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

**Models with side curtain airbags**

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on both sides of the vehicle also activates.

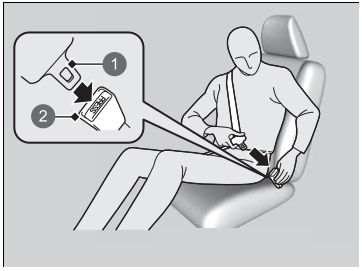
# Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

**Seats** P. 215



**1.** Pull the seat belt out slowly.




**2.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

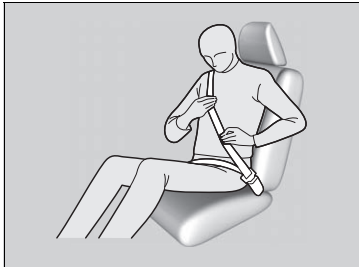
1 Latch Plate
2 Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

**About Your Seat Belts** P. 40
**Seat Belt Inspection** P. 50



**3.** Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

**4.** If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

**⚠WARNING**

**Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

*Continued*

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



**1.** Move the anchorage up and down while holding the release button.
**2.** Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

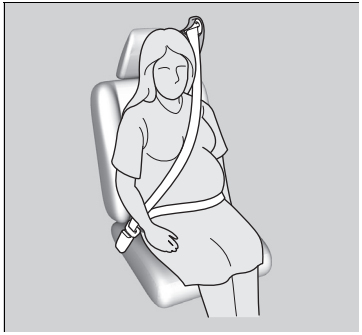
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

**Consider alternative:**

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

**⚠WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

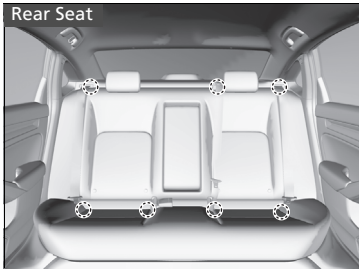
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

# Anchorage Points




When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.




The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components



The front, front side, rear side* and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

- Four side airbags, one for the driver, one for the front passenger and one each for the rear outboard occupants*.
  The front airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs and the rear airbags* are stored next to the outer rear seating positions.
  All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.



* Not available on all models

## Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

# Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

# Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

## ■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.



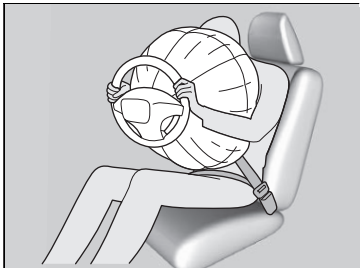
* Not available on all models

## Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

*Continued*

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

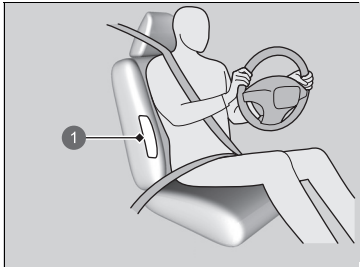


* Not available on all models

# Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant* during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

## ■ Housing Locations

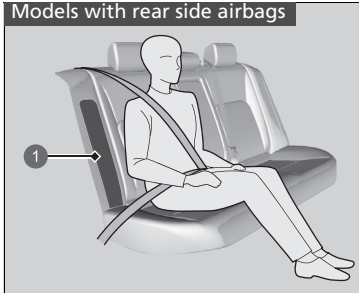



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.

Each are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❶ Side Airbag Location

Models with rear side airbags




❶ Side Airbag Location

Side Airbags

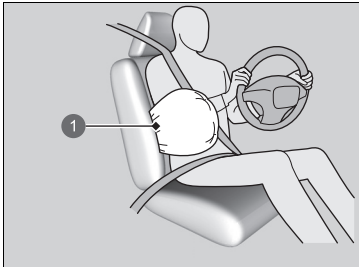
Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

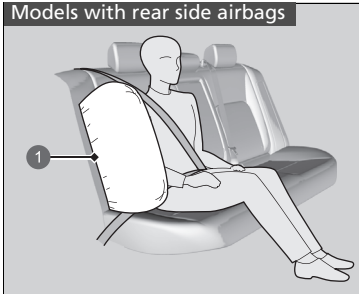
## ■ Operation




When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

❶ Deployed Side Airbag

Models with rear side airbags




❶ Deployed Side Airbag

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front and rear passengers lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

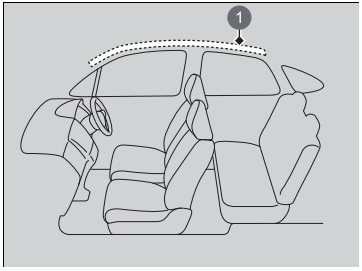
It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

# Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.



## ■ Housing Locations




The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

1 Side Curtain Airbag Location

### Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

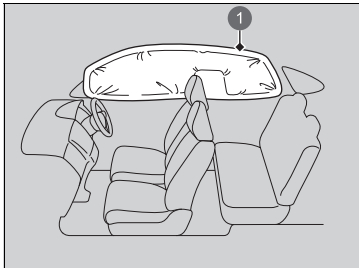
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.



* Not available on all models

## ■ Operation




The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

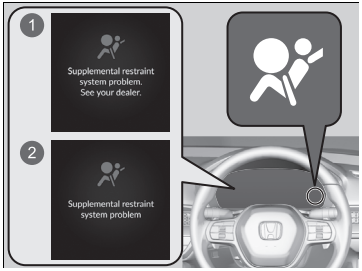
One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

# Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.



## ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator




❶ Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
❷ Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

**■ When the power mode is set to ON**

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

**⚠WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

# Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

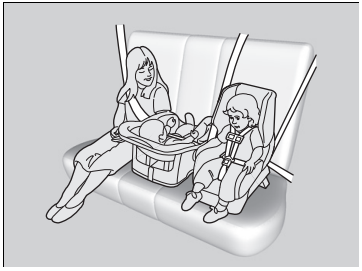
In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

**⚠WARNING**




NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

**⚠WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

**Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 70

African and Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

**⚠WARNING**




Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

*Continued*

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 187

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor and front passenger's doorjamb*.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 90

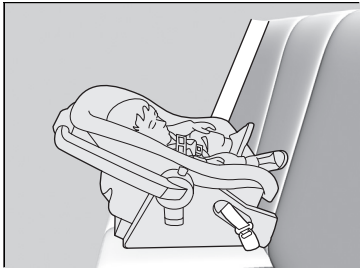


* Not available on all models

# Safety of Infants and Small Children

## ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

**⚠WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Continued

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

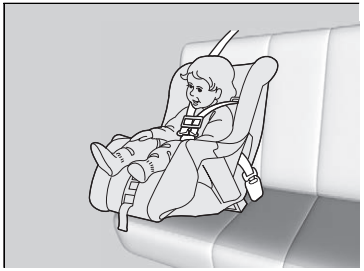
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

**⚠WARNING**

**Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.**

**If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.**

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

*Continued*

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

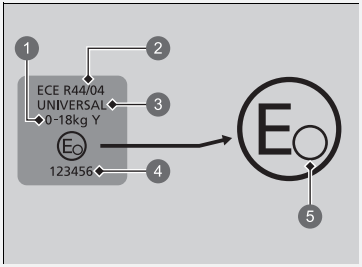
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

## ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label

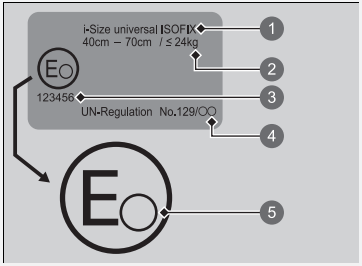



1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Continued

## Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label




❶ Category
❷ Size and weight indication
❸ Approval number
❹ Regulation number
❺ Country code

## Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Left-hand Drive Type




Right-hand Drive Type




| | |
|---|---|
| U | Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts. |
| UF | Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts. |
| | Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems. |
| | Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only. |
| | Never use a rearward facing child restraint system. |
| | Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages. |

*Continued*

*1:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2:Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.

*3:For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4:If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
- The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

All models

## Detail information for CRS installation

| Seat position number | Seating position and Seat position number | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Size groups Weight Stature | | ❶ Front passenger*1, *2 | ❷ 2nd row*4 Left | ❸ 2nd row*4 Centre | ❹ 2nd row*4 Right |
| Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no) | Group 0 | Up to 10kg | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Group 0+ | Up to 13kg | | | | |
| | Group I | 9-18kg | Yes*3 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Group II | 15-25kg | | | | |
| | Group III | 22-36kg | | | | |
| i-Size seating position (yes/no) | ≤ 150cm | | No | Yes | No | Yes |
| Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS | Refer to genuine CRS list | | No | Yes | No | Yes |
| Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2) | — | | No | No | No | No |
| Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3) | Group 0 | Up to 10kg | No | R3 | No | R3 |
| | Group 0+ | Up to 13kg | | | | |
| | Group I | 9-18kg | | | | |
| Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3) | Group I | 9-18kg | No | F3 | No | F3 |
| Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3) | ≤ 150cm | | B3 | B3 | B3 | B3 |

### Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

| Fixture (CRF) | Description |
|---|---|
| ISO/L1 | Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat |
| ISO/L2 | Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat |
| ISO/R1 | Rearward-facing infant seat |
| ISO/R2X | Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/R2 | Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/R3 | Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/F2X | Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/F2 | Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/F3 | Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems |
| ISO/B2 | Reduced width forward-facing booster seat |
| ISO/B3 | Full width forward-facing booster seat |

Continued

*1:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2:Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.

*3:For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4:If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
- The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

## Genuine CRS List

**R129**

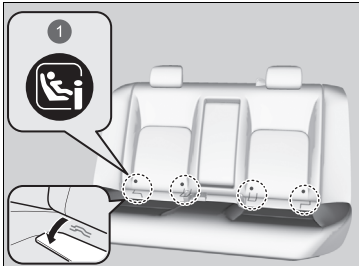
| Range of application | Child Restraint System | Category |
|---|---|---|
| Under 100cm | Honda Baby & Kids i-size | i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing) |
| Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm | Honda Baby & Kids i-size | i-Size Universal ISOFIX |



*Continued*

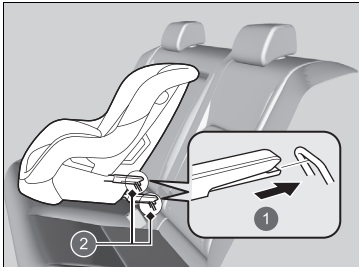
## Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



1. Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchorages covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

❶ Marks



3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
   ▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

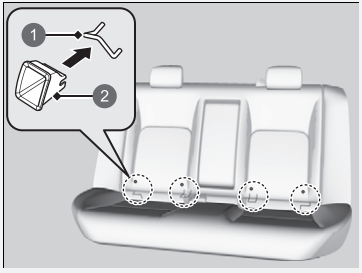
❶ Rigid Type
❷ Lower Anchorages

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

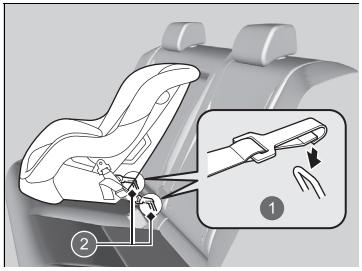
**⚠WARNING**

**Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

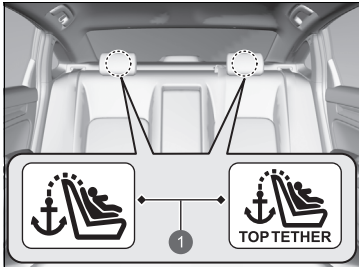
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup




❶ Flexible Type
❷ Lower Anchorages




❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

**Child restraint system with tether strap**

**4.** Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

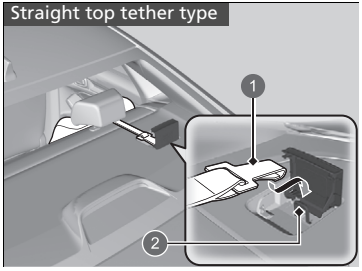
For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



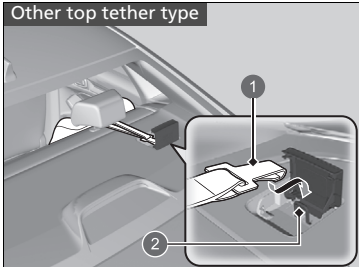
*Continued*

Straight top tether type



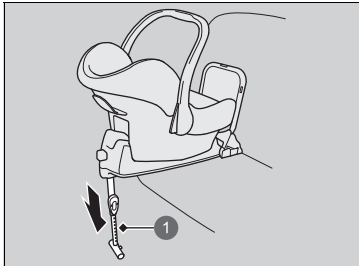

❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Anchorage

Other top tether type




❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Anchorage

**5.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
**6.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
**7.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
**8.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.




❶ Support Leg

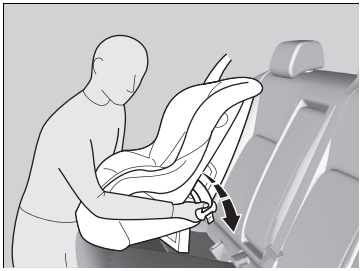
Child restraint system with support leg

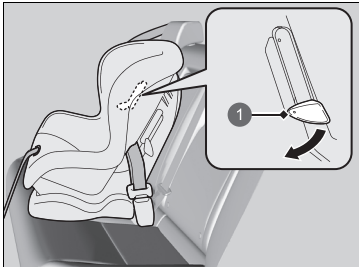
**4.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.



*Continued*

## Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt






❶ Tab

**1.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.

**2.** Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

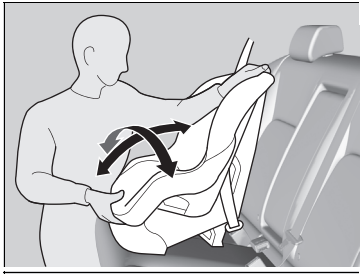
**3.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

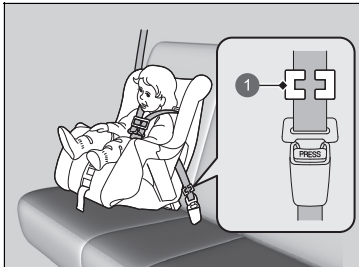
**4.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

**5.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.






❶ Locking Clip

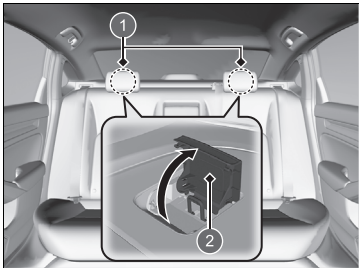
**6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
**7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

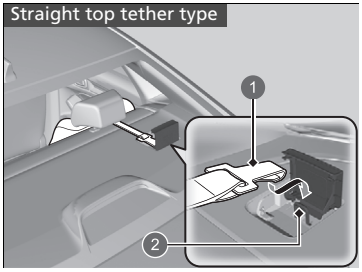
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.
**3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
**4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
**5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

*Continued*

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether




❶ Tether Anchorage Points
❷ Cover




❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Anchorage

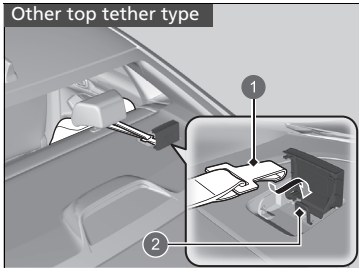
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

**1.** Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
**2.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
**3.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
**4.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.




❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Anchorage

# Safety of Larger Children

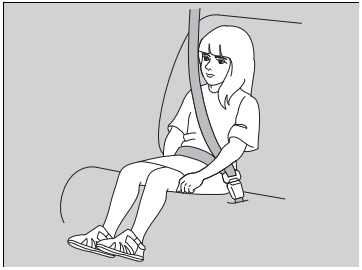


## ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

## ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



**■ Checklist**

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

**⚠WARNING**

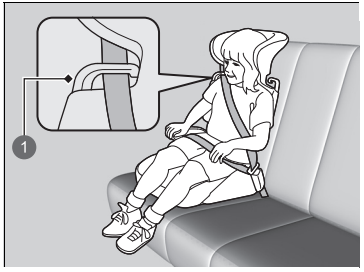
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.




A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

### ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

**1.** Select the fresh air mode.
**2.** Select the [⇄] mode.
**3.** Set the fan speed to high.
**4.** Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

**⚠WARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

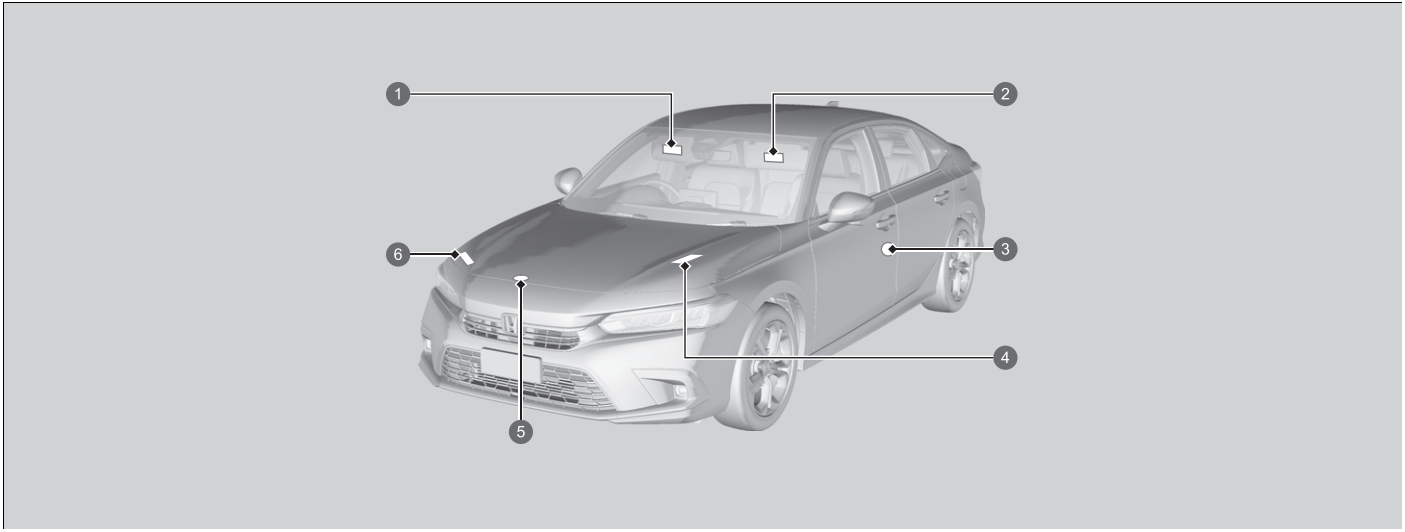
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.




1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 64
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 64
3. Child Safety* ➔ P. 65
4. Battery
5. Radiator Cap ➔ P. 559
6. Front Bulkhead Cover* ➔ P. 552





* Not available on all models

# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

**Indicators** ..... 92
**Gauges and Driver Information Interface**
Gauges ..... 112
Models with A-type meter
Driver Information Interface ..... 115
Models with B-type meter
Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area) ..... 143
Models with B-type meter
Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area) ..... 146

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.



| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  *1 | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) | → P. 94 |
|  *1 | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) | → P. 96 |
|  *1 | Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator | → P. 96 |
|  *1 | Automatic Brake Hold Indicator | → P. 96 |
|  *1 | Malfunction Indicator Lamp | → P. 97 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  *1 | Charging System Indicator | → P. 97 |
|  | Shift Position Indicator | → P. 98 |
|  | **M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator* | → P. 98 |
|  | Transmission System Indicator | → P. 98 |
|  | Seat Belt Reminder Indicator | → P. 99 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | Low Fuel Indicator | → P. 100 |
|  *1 | Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator | → P. 100 |
|  *1 | Supplemental Restraint System Indicator | → P. 100 |
|  *1 | Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator | → P. 101 |
|  *1 | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator | → P. 101 |
|  *1 | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator | → P. 101 |

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.



* Not available on all models

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  *1 | Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator* | → P. 102 |
|  | Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators | → P. 103 |
|  | High Beam Indicator | → P. 103 |
|  | Lights On Indicator | → P. 103 |
|  | Fog Light Indicator* | → P. 103 |
|  *1 | Auto High-Beam Indicator | → P. 103 |
|  | System Message Indicator | → P. 104 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  *2  *3 | **ECON** Mode Indicator | → P. 105 |
|  | **NORMAL** Mode Indicator* | → P. 105 |
|  | **SPORT** Mode Indicator* | → P. 105 |
|  *1 | Low Temperature Indicator* | → P. 105 |
|  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator* | → P. 108 |
|  | Immobilizer System Indicator | → P. 106 |
|  | Security System Alarm Indicator | → P. 106 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  *1 | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) | → P. 107 |
|  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) | → P. 107 |
|  *1 | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) | → P. 108 |
|  | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) | → P. 108 |
|  *1 | Safety Support Indicator (Amber) | → P. 109 |
|  | Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray) | → P. 111 |

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.
*2: Models without drive mode switch
*3: Models with drive mode switch

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (Red) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) | • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. | • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied.<br>• Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off.<br>• Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off. |
| | | • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. | • **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level.<br>➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 623 |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (Red) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) | • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. | Models with electrical vacuum pump system<br>• **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.<br>➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 624<br>All models<br>• **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 623<br>• **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.<br>➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 624 |



*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (Amber) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. | • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability. |
| | | • Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |
|  | Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator | • Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. | ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 515 |
|  | Automatic Brake Hold Indicator | • Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. | ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 515 |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Malfunction Indicator Lamp | • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.<br>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. | ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 622 |
|  | Charging System Indicator | • Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system. | • Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately.<br>➡ **Checking the Battery** P. 581<br>➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 622 |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Shift Position Indicator | • Indicates the current shift position. | **Shifting** P. 422, 425 |
|  | **M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator* | • Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. | **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 428 |
|  | Transmission System Indicator | • Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. | • **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |
| | | • Blinks if the transmission system has a problem and the performance of the vehicle is reduced. | • Avoid sudden starts, sudden acceleration and high speed, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |
| | | Models with paddle shifter<br>• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem and the paddle shifters cannot be used. | • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |



* Not available on all models

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Seat Belt Reminder Indicator | • Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.<br>• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.<br>**Models with rear sear belt reminder**<br>• Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON.<br>**All models**<br>• Blinks while driving if you, the front passenger and/or the rear passenger* has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. | • The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you, the front passenger and the rear passengers* fasten their seat belts.<br>• **Stays on after you, the front passenger and/or the rear passenger* has fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 43 |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Low Fuel Indicator | • Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 Liter left). | • **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. |
| | | • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. | • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator | • Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.<br>➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518 |
|  | Supplemental Restraint System Indicator | • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:<br>- Supplemental restraint system<br>- Side airbag system<br>- Side curtain airbag system*<br>- Seat belt tensioner | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |

 * Not available on all models

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator | • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.<br>➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 625 |
|  | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator | • Blinks when VSA is active. | — |
| | | • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system or hill start assist system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 434 |
| | | • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator | • Comes on when you partially disable VSA. | ➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 435 |
| | | • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator* | • May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.<br>• Comes on and stays on when:<br>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.<br>- The system has not been calibrated. | • **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.<br>• **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated.<br>➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 437 |
| | | • Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system. | • **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |

 * Not available on all models

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators | • Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.<br>• Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. | • **Does not blink or blinks rapidly**<br>➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 563 |
| | | • Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. | ➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 520 |
|  | High Beam Indicator | • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. | — |
|  | Lights On Indicator | • Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on. | ➡ **Lights** P. 196 |
|  | Fog Light Indicator* | • Comes on when the fog lights are on. | ➡ **Fog Lights*** P. 200 |
|  | Auto High-Beam Indicator | • Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. | ➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 202 |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | System Message Indicator | • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. | • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.<br>Models with A-type meter<br>• While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Warnings**[*1]/**Information**[*2] to see the message again.<br>➡ **Accessing contents in the display** P. 115<br>• The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed.<br>Models with B-type meter<br>• While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again.<br>➡ **Switching the Display** P. 146<br>• The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the right selector wheel is rolled. |

*1:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2:Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

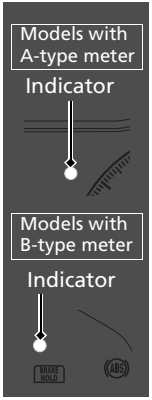
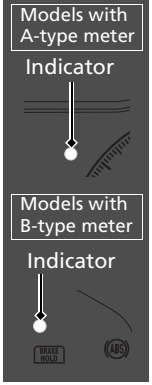
| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|   | **ECON** Mode Indicator | Models without drive mode switch<br>• Comes on when the ECON mode is on.<br>Models with drive mode switch<br>• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**. | ➡ **ECON Button*** P. 430<br>➡ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 431 |
|   | **NORMAL** Mode Indicator* | • Comes on when you set the drive mode to **NORMAL**. | ➡ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 431 |
|   | **SPORT** Mode Indicator* | • Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**. | Models with A-type meter<br>• The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected.<br>Models with B-type meter<br>• Gauges in the instrument panel lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected.<br>➡ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 431 |
|  | Low Temperature Indicator* | • Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low. | • If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. |

*1:Models without drive mode switch
*2:Models with drive mode switch



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Immobilizer System Indicator | • Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information. | • **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.<br>• **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. |
|  | Security System Alarm Indicator | • Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. | **Security System Alarm** P. 186 |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.<br>• ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled. | • Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.<br>➡ **Load Limit** P. 411<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) | • Lights up in white when you press the button.<br>• Lights up in green when you press the up or down the **RES/+/SET/–** switch. | ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 460 |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. | • Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.<br>➡ **Load Limit** P. 411<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) | • Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button.<br>• Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation. | ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 482 |
|  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator* | • Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on. | • Each time you press the Interval button, the following interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following intervals.<br>➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 477 |

 * Not available on all models

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Safety Support Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if there is a problem with Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. | • Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.<br>➡ **Load Limit** P. 411<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | | • Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |



*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Safety Support Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off. | • **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high.<br>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.<br>The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.<br>➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509 |
| | | | • **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera.<br>➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509<br>• It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk. |

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Safety Support Indicator (Green/ Gray) | • Lights up in green when Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on.<br>• Lights up in green and gray when Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS is off.<br>• Lights up in gray when Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are off. | **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 499<br>**CMBS On and Off** P. 451 |

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

### ■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Tachometer

Models with A-type meter

The tachometer can be turned on and off using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

**Settings*** P. 131
**Customized Features** P. 356

Even if you have turned off the tachometer on the driver information interface or audio/information screen, if **No content** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E* or 0*.
Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Models with B-type meter

## ■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➡ **Overheating** P. 619

## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

Models with A-type meter

## ■ Ambient Meter

Models without 18 inch wheel

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner with SPORT mode* off.

Models with SPORT mode

Changes to red to indicate that SPORT mode is selected.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 460
➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 482

Models with A-type meter

## ■ Clock

Shows the clock.
You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➡ **Clock** P. 166

### Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

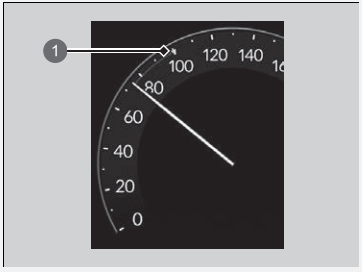
You can adjust the temperature reading.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

### Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS

Models with B-type meter

When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.




❶ Set Speed

 * Not available on all models

Models with A-type meter

# Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low.** or **Engine temperature too hot.** message is displayed.

➔ **If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears** P. 621

➔ **Overheating** P. 619

## ■ Switching the Display

### ■ Accessing contents in the display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

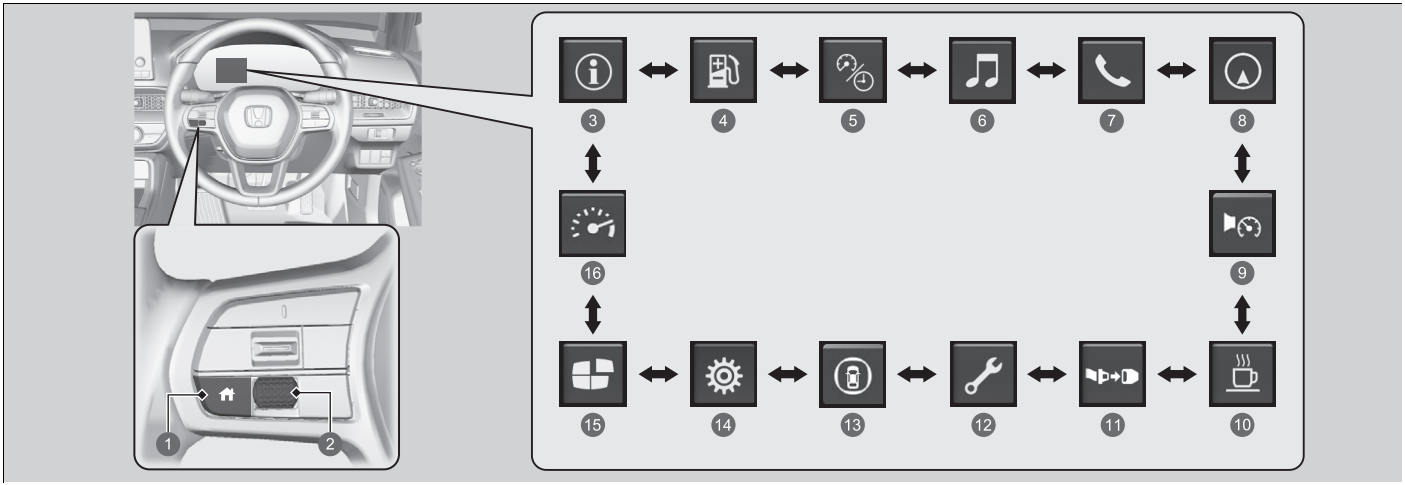
Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➔ **Customize Display** P. 130



*Continued*




❶ ⌂ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ **Warnings**[*1]/**Information**[*2] ➡ P. 130
❹ **Range & fuel** ➡ P. 117
❺ **Speed & time** ➡ P. 120
❻ **Audio**[*] ➡ P. 122
❼ **Phone**[*] ➡ P. 122
❽ **Navigation**[*] ➡ P. 122
❾ **Speed alarm**[*] ➡ P. 123
❿ **Driver attention** ➡ P. 124
⓫ **Seat belts**[*] ➡ P. 128
⓬ **Maintenance** ➡ P. 128
⓭ **Safety support** ➡ P. 129
⓮ **Settings**[*] ➡ P. 131
⓯ **Customize display** ➡ P. 130
⓰ **No content**

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

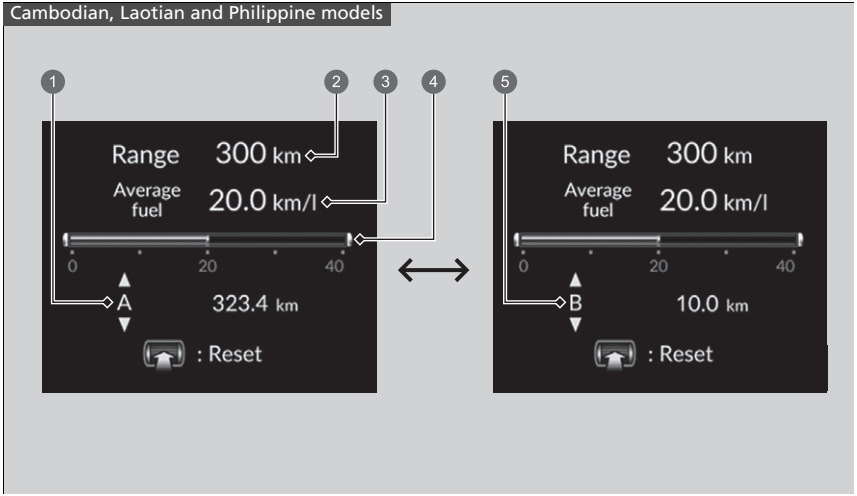


* Not available on all models

## ■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

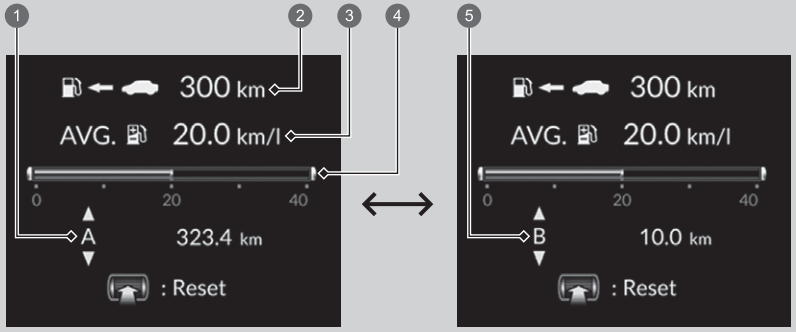
Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Range
❸ Average Fuel Economy
❹ Instant Fuel Economy
❺ Trip Meter B

*Continued*

Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

### ■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

**Resetting a trip meter**

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

### ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km.

### ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Except African models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

**Settings*** P. 131
**Customized Features** P. 356

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

**Settings*** P. 131
**Customized Features** P. 356

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.



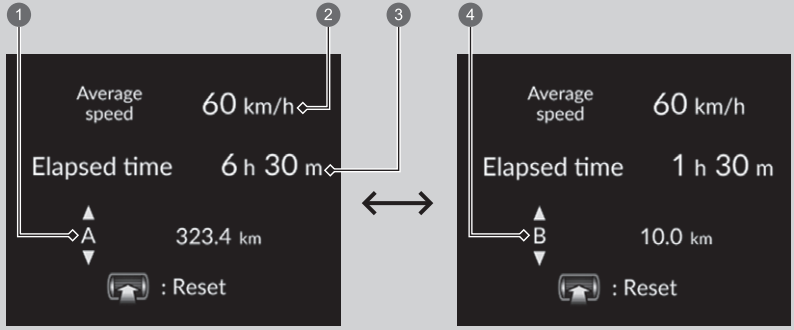
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Speed & Time

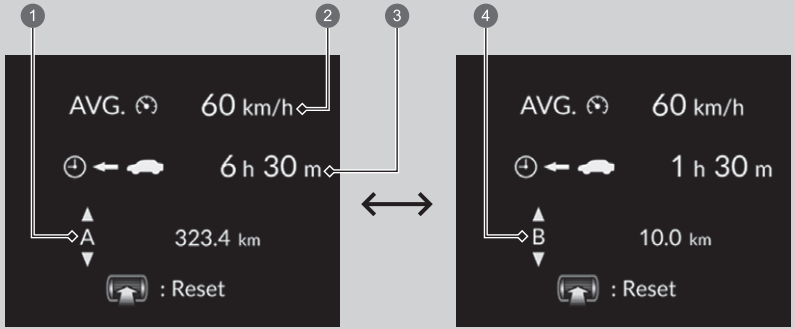
Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Average Speed
❸ Elapsed Time
❹ Trip Meter B

Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Average Speed
❸ Elapsed Time
❹ Trip Meter B



*Continued*

■ **Trip meter**

➔ **Trip meter** P. 119

■ **Elapsed time**

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ **Average speed**

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Audio*

Shows the current audio information.

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 305

## ■ Phone*

Shows the current phone information.

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 373

## ■ Navigation*

■ **Compass**

Shows the compass screen.

■ **Turn-by-Turn Directions**

When driving guidance is provided by the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➔ **Android Auto** P. 352

➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 346

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➔ **Settings*** P. 131

➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➔ **Settings*** P. 131

➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

Navigation*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

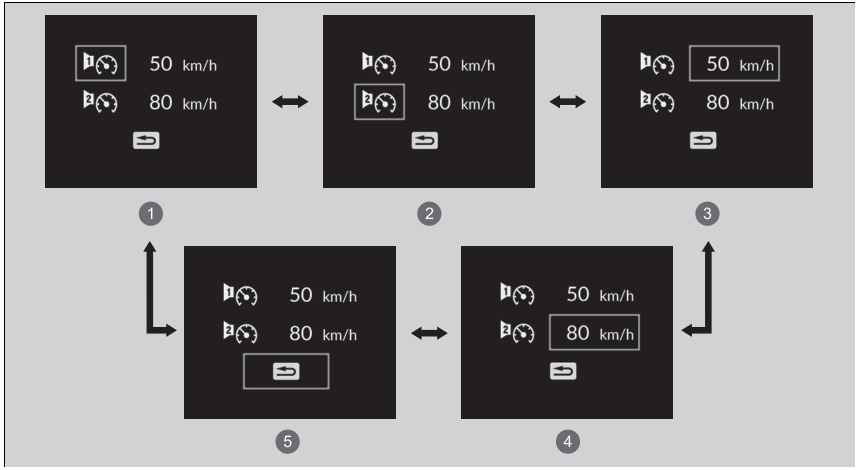
Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

 * Not available on all models

## Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:




❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

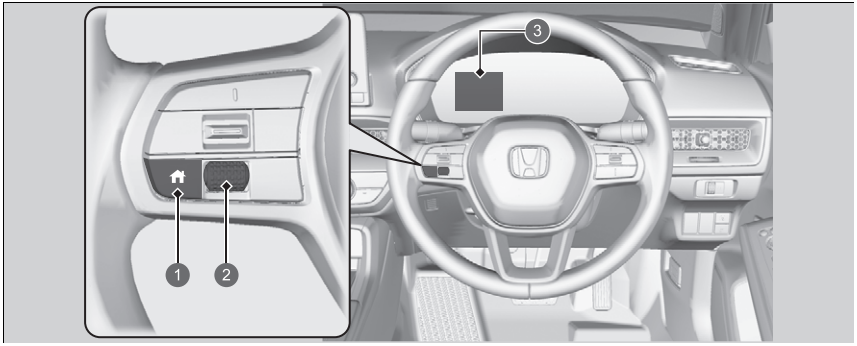


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.




❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Driver Information Interface

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.




When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Accessing contents in the display** P. 115

❶ Level

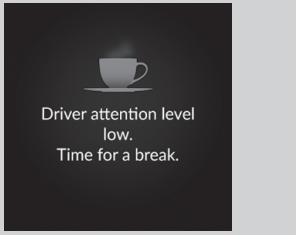



If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

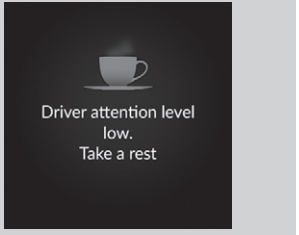


*Continued*

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break.**[*1]/**Driver attention level low. Take a rest**[*2] message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.

If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 482
- The condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert**[*1]/**Tactile alert only**[*2] or **OFF**.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Seat Belts*

Appears when any of the seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## ■ Maintenance

Show the oil monitor system.

➔ **Oil Monitor System** P. 539



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Safety Support

Indicates the state of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the state of any of the above mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.




❶ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
❷ Area Info for CMBS
❸ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and State Info
❹ CMBS Icon and State Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 499
➔ **CMBS On and Off** P. 451

You can also confirm the state of the each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 109
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)** P. 111

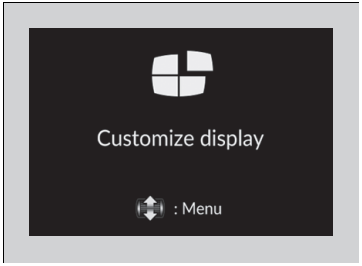
*Continued*

## ■ Customize Display

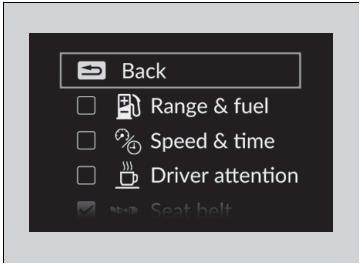
Change the settings to your liking.

### ■ Arrange content

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.




1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize display**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.




3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

## ■ Warnings*1/Information*2

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

**Customize Display**

Icons that are gray cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

**Warnings*1/Information*2**

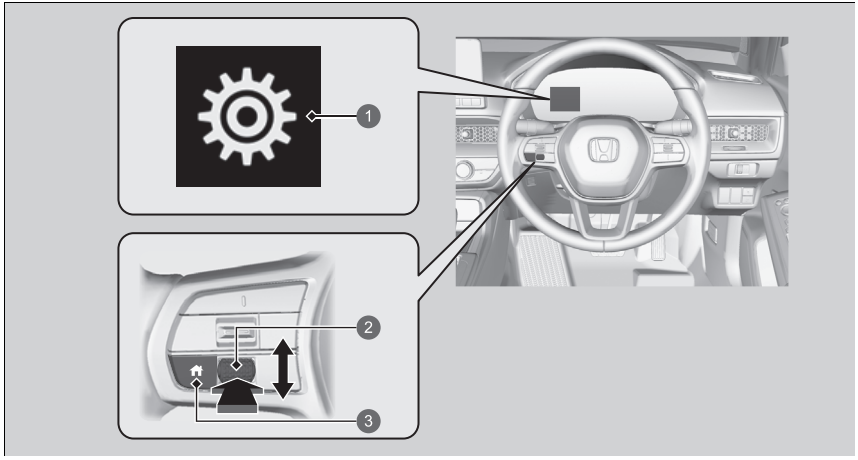
If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

## ■ Settings*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

Press the [home] (home) button, then select the **Settings** screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in [P]. Then, press the left selector wheel.




❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ [home] (Home) Button

Settings*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

**List of customizable options** P. 132
**Example of customization settings** P. 140

When you customize settings, shift to [P].



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

■ **List of customizable options**

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Driver assist system setup** | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Forward collision warning distance**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance** | Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Long/Normal*1/Short**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Far/Normal*1/Near** |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**ACC forward vehicle detect beep**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**ACC vehicle ahead detected beep** | Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range. | **ON/OFF*1** |
| | **Lead Car Departure Notification System** | Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. | **Normal*1/Early/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Driver assist system setup** | **Road departure mitigation setting** | Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning only**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Early/Normal*1/Delayed/ Warning only** |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Lane keeping assist suspend beep**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Lane keep assist beep** | Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended. | **ON/OFF*1** |
| | **Driver attention monitor** | Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Tactile and audible alert*1/ Tactile alert/OFF**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Tactile and audible alert*1/ Tactile alert only/ OFF** |

*1:Default Setting



*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Meter setup** | **Adjust outside temp. display** | Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. | **-3°C** ~ **±0°C**[*1] ~ **+3°C** |
| | **"Trip A" reset timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**When fully refueled/ IGN OFF/Manually reset**[*1]<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] |
| | **"Trip B" reset timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**When fully refueled/ IGN OFF/Manually reset**[*1]<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Meter setup** | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Adjust alarm volume**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Alarm volume control** | Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**High/Mid***1**/Low**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Max/Mid***1**/Min** |
| | **Fuel efficiency backlight** | Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | **Rear seat reminder** | Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | **Fuel economy unit** | Selects the fuel consumption units. | Except Vietnamese models<br>**km/l***1**/l/100km**<br>Vietnamese models<br>**km/l/l/100km***1 |
| | **Tachometer** | Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the instrument panel. | **ON***1**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Keyless access setup*** | **Keyless access beep volume** | Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle. | **High*1/Low** |
| | **Keyless access light flash** | Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors. | **ON*1/OFF** |
| | **Keyless access beep** | Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle. | **ON*1/OFF** |
| | **Remote start system ON/OFF** | Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. | **ON*1/OFF** |
| **Lighting setup** | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Auto high-beam**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Auto High-Beam** | Turns the auto high-beam on and off. | **ON*1/OFF** |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Interior light dimming time**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Interior light dimmer duration** | Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. | **60sec/30sec*1/15sec** |

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Lighting setup** | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Headlight auto off timer**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Headlight auto OFF timer** | Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. | **60sec/30sec/15sec***1**/0sec** |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Auto headlight ON with wiper ON**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Headlight integration with wipers** | Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. | **ON***1**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting



*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| Door setup | **Auto door lock** | Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock. | **With vehicle speed**[*1]/ **Shift from P/OFF** |
| | **Auto door unlock** | Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. | **Shift to P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF** |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models **Walk away auto lock**[*] Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models **Walk away lock**[*] | Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle. | **ON/OFF**[*1] |
| | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models **Keyless lock answer back** Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models **Keyless lock notification** | LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Keyless remote power window control**[*] | Turns remote window control using the keyless remote on and off. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Auto folding door mirror**[*] | Changes how you can fold the door mirrors. | **Auto fold with keyless**[*1]/ **Manual only** |

*1:Default Setting



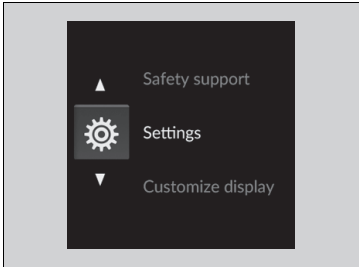
* Not available on all models

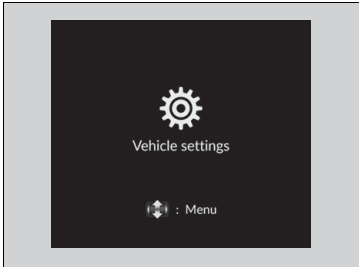
| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Maintenance reset** | — | Resets the oil monitor system information when you have performed the maintenance service. | **Cancel/Reset** |
| **Default all** | — | Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting. | Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Cancel/Set**<br>Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models<br>**Cancel/OK** |

*1:Default Setting

■ **Example of customization settings**

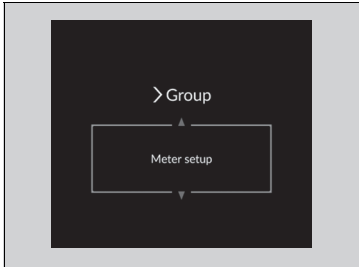
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" reset timing** setting to **When fully refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" reset timing** is **Manually reset**[*1]/**Manual reset**[*2].



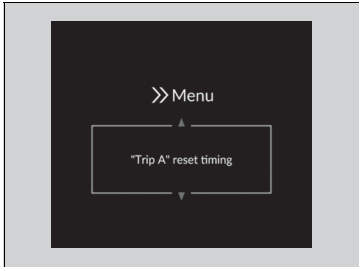




**1.** Press the (home) button, to select **Settings**, then press the left selector wheel.

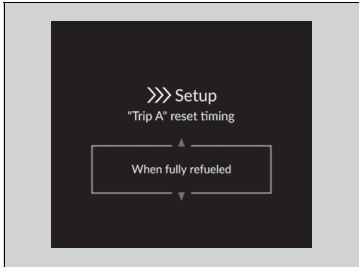
*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.
   ▶ **Adjust outside temp. display** appears first in the display.



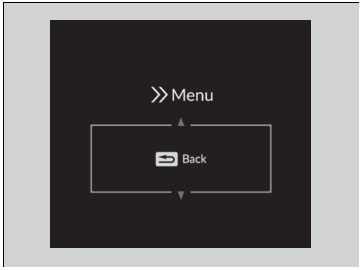

4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" reset timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When fully refueled, IGN OFF**[*1]**/When ignition is turned OFF**[*2], **Manually reset**[*1]**/Manual reset**[*2] or **Back**.




5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When fully refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
   ▶ The **Selected** appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

*Continued*




**6.** Press the left selector wheel after **Back** appears on the display.
**7.** Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Models with B-type meter

# Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 308
➔ **Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio** P. 342

## ■ Clock

Shows the clock.
You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 166

Clock

You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

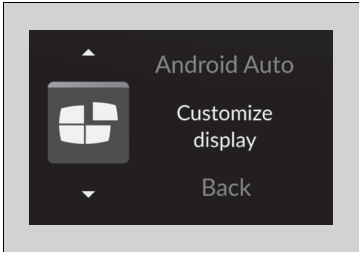
➔ **Customize Display** P. 144

*Continued*

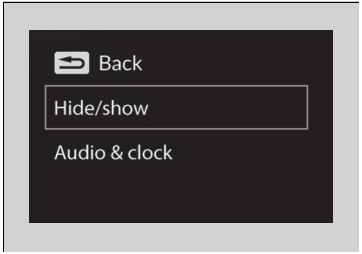
## ■ Customize Display

### ■ Arrange audio source on the left side area

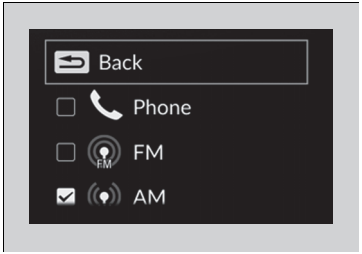
You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.




**1.** Roll the left selector wheel, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize display** and press the left selector wheel.




**2.** Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.



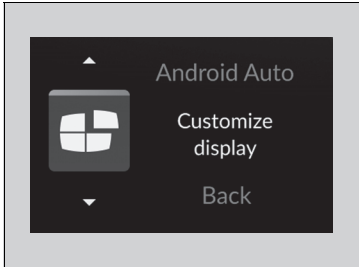

**3.** Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

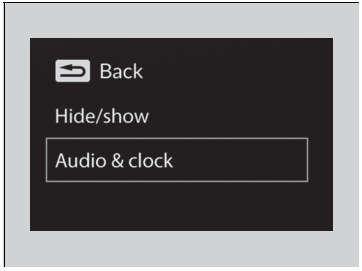
When you customize settings, shift to P.

### ■ Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

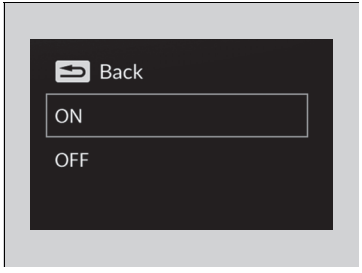
You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.




**1.** Roll the left selector wheel, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize display** and press the left selector wheel.




**2.** Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Audio & clock**, then press the left selector wheel.




**3.** Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

# Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low.** or **Engine temperature too hot.** message is displayed.

➔ **If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears** P. 621
➔ **Overheating** P. 619

## ■ Switching the Display

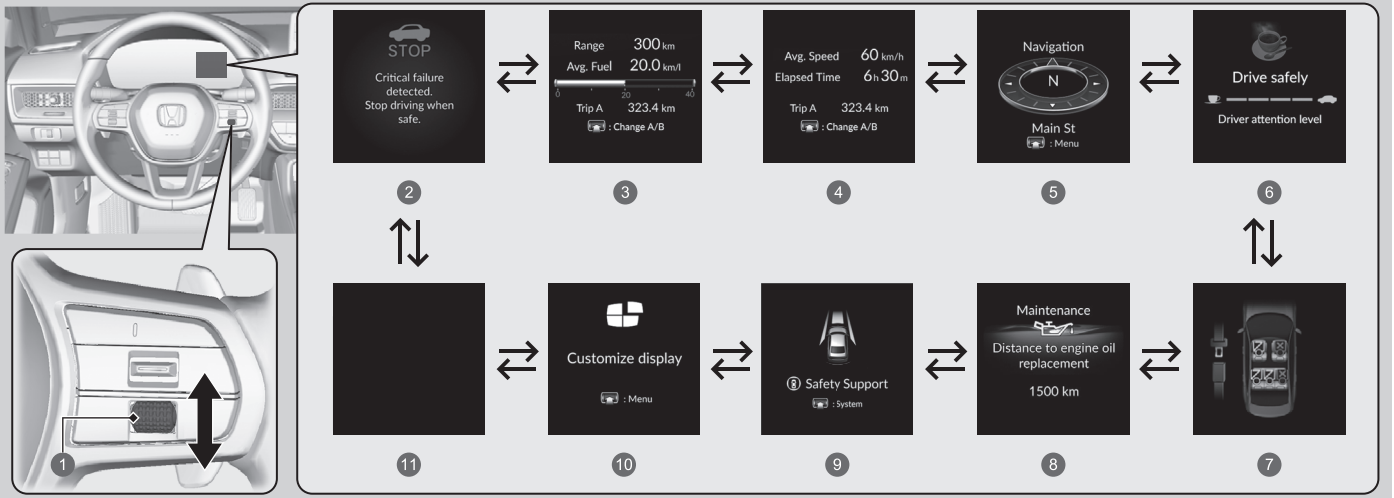
Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

Switching the Display

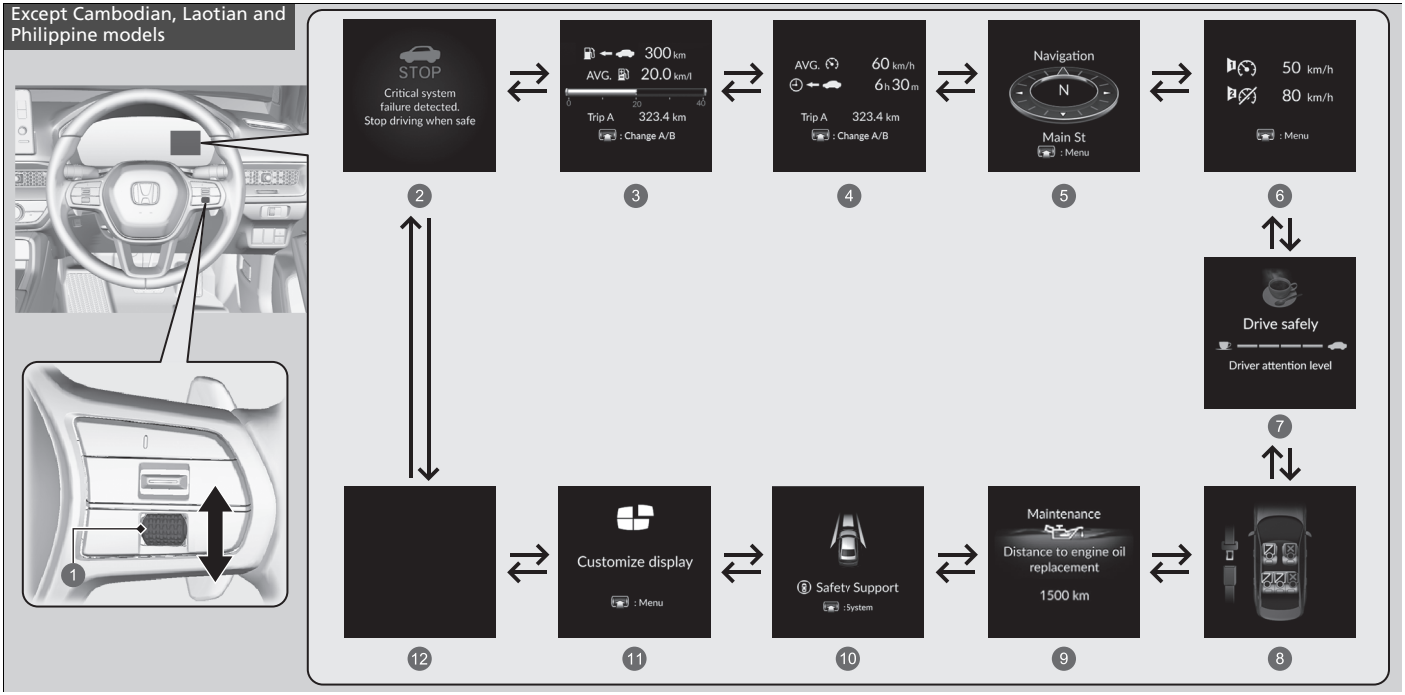
You can add or delete the meter contents.

➔ **Customize Display** P. 163

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




1. Right Selector Wheel
2. Warning Messages ➔ P. 162
3. Range / Fuel / Trip Meter ➔ P. 149
4. Speed & Time ➔ P. 152
5. Navigation/Compass ➔ P. 154
6. Driver Attention Monitor ➔ P. 156
7. Seat Belts ➔ P. 160
8. Maintenance ➔ P. 160
9. Safety Support ➔ P. 161
10. Customize Display ➔ P. 163
11. No Content



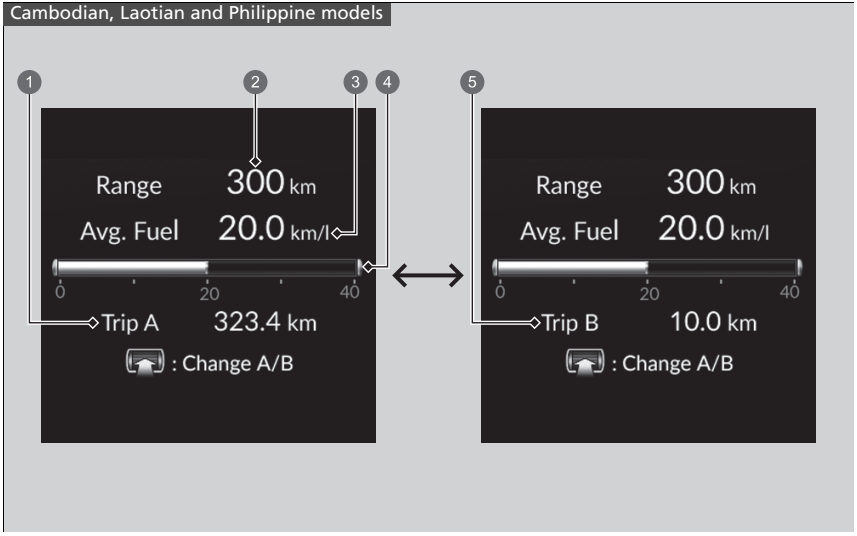

❶ Right Selector Wheel
❷ Warning Messages ➔ P. 162
❸ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter ➔ P. 149
❹ Speed & Time ➔ P. 152
❺ Navigation/Compass ➔ P. 154
❻ Speed Alarm* ➔ P. 155
❼ Driver Attention Monitor ➔ P. 156
❽ Seat Belts* ➔ P. 160
❾ Maintenance ➔ P. 160
❿ Safety Support ➔ P. 161
⓫ Customize Display ➔ P. 163
⓬ No Content

* Not available on all models

## ■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

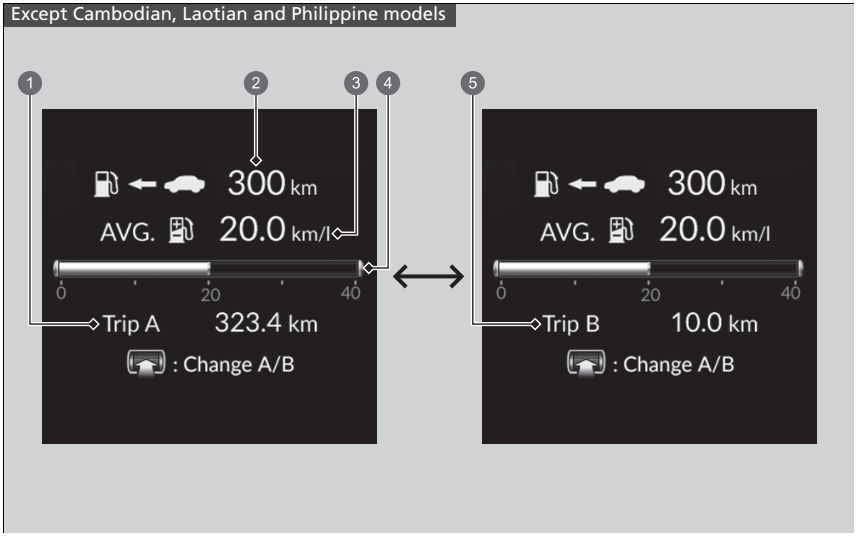
Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Range
❸ Average Fuel Economy
❹ Instant Fuel Economy
❺ Trip Meter B

*Continued*

Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

### ■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

**Resetting a trip meter**

To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

### ■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km.

### ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Except African models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.



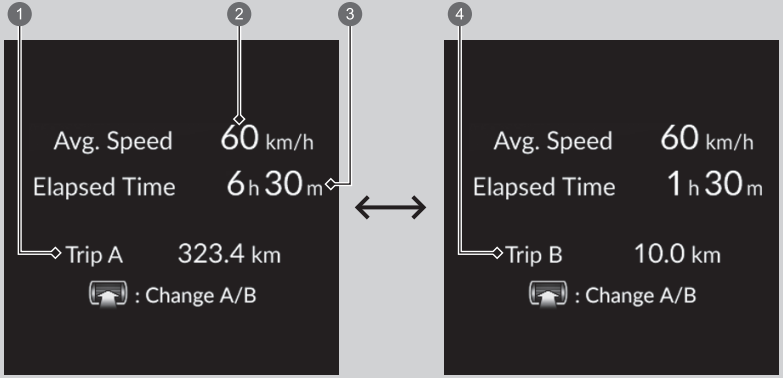
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

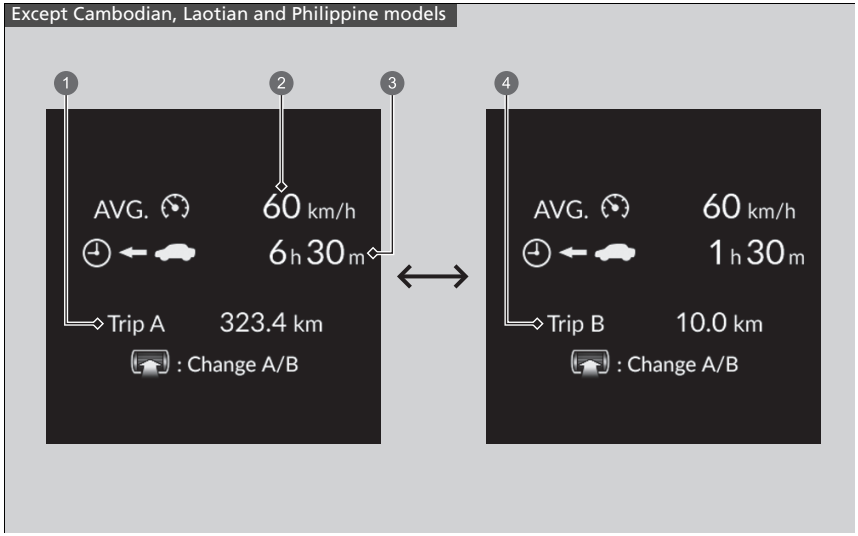
## ■ Speed & Time

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




1. Trip meter A
2. Average Speed
3. Elapsed Time
4. Trip meter B




❶ Trip meter A
❷ Average Speed
❸ Elapsed Time
❹ Trip meter B



*Continued*

### ■ Trip meter
➔ **Trip meter** P. 151

### ■ Elapsed time
Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### ■ Average speed
Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Navigation

### ■ Compass
Shows the compass screen.

### ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions
When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 346
➔ **Android Auto** P. 352

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 356

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

Models with navigation system

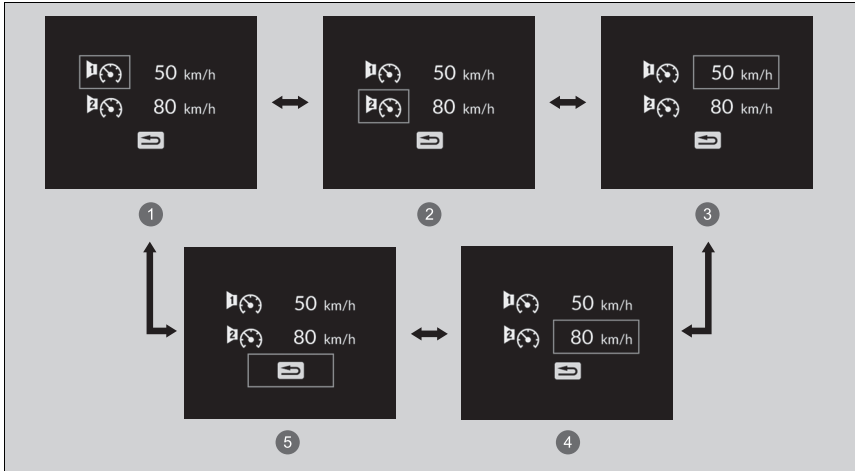
When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by pressing the right selector wheel.
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

 * Not available on all models

## ■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Press the right selector wheel to display the setting screen, then roll it, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:




❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

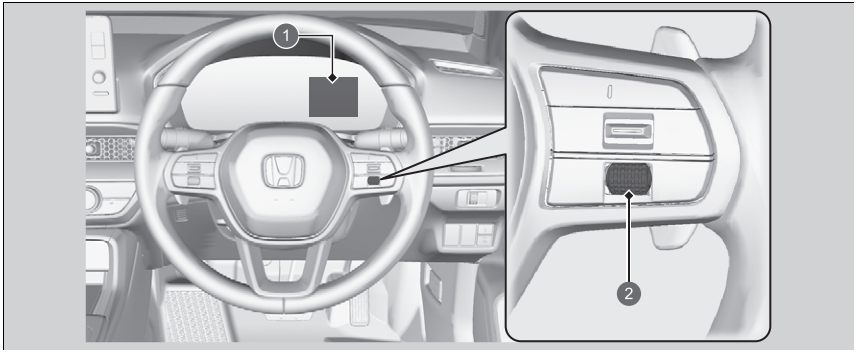


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.




❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Right Selector Wheel

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.




When you select Driver Attention Monitor on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 146

❶ Level




If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.



*Continued*

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break.**[*1]/**Driver attention level low. Take a rest**[*2] message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.

If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 482
- The condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**
You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert, Tactile Alert**[*1]**/Tactile alert only**[*2] or **OFF**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.



*Continued*

## ■ Seat Belts*

Appears when any of the seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## ■ Maintenance

Show the oil monitor system.

➔ **Oil Monitor System** P. 539



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Safety Support

Indicates the state of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the state of any of the above mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.




❶ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
❷ Area Info for CMBS
❸ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and State Info
❹ CMBS Icon and State Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 499
➔ **CMBS On and Off** P. 451

You can also confirm the state of the each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 109
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)** P. 111



*Continued*

## ■ Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Warnings

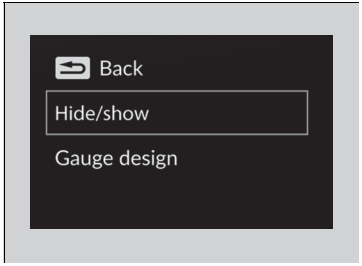
If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

## ■ Customize Display

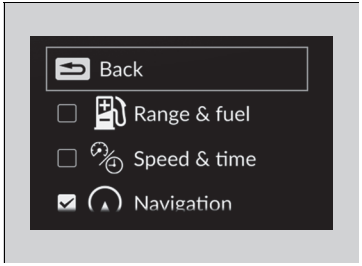
Change the settings to your liking.

### ■ Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.




1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.




3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Arrange content on the right side area

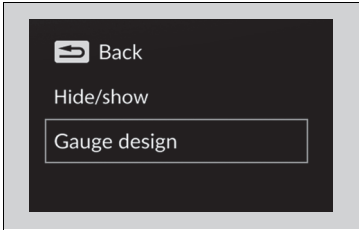
Contents that are gray cannot be removed from the right side area.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

*Continued*

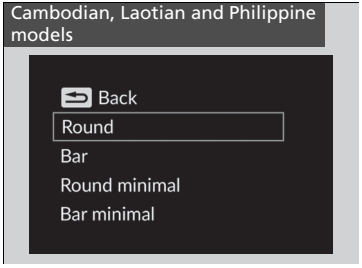
## ■ Change gauge design

You can change the design, such as speedometer, tachometer and so on.



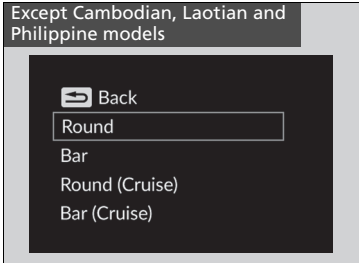

1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models




3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models



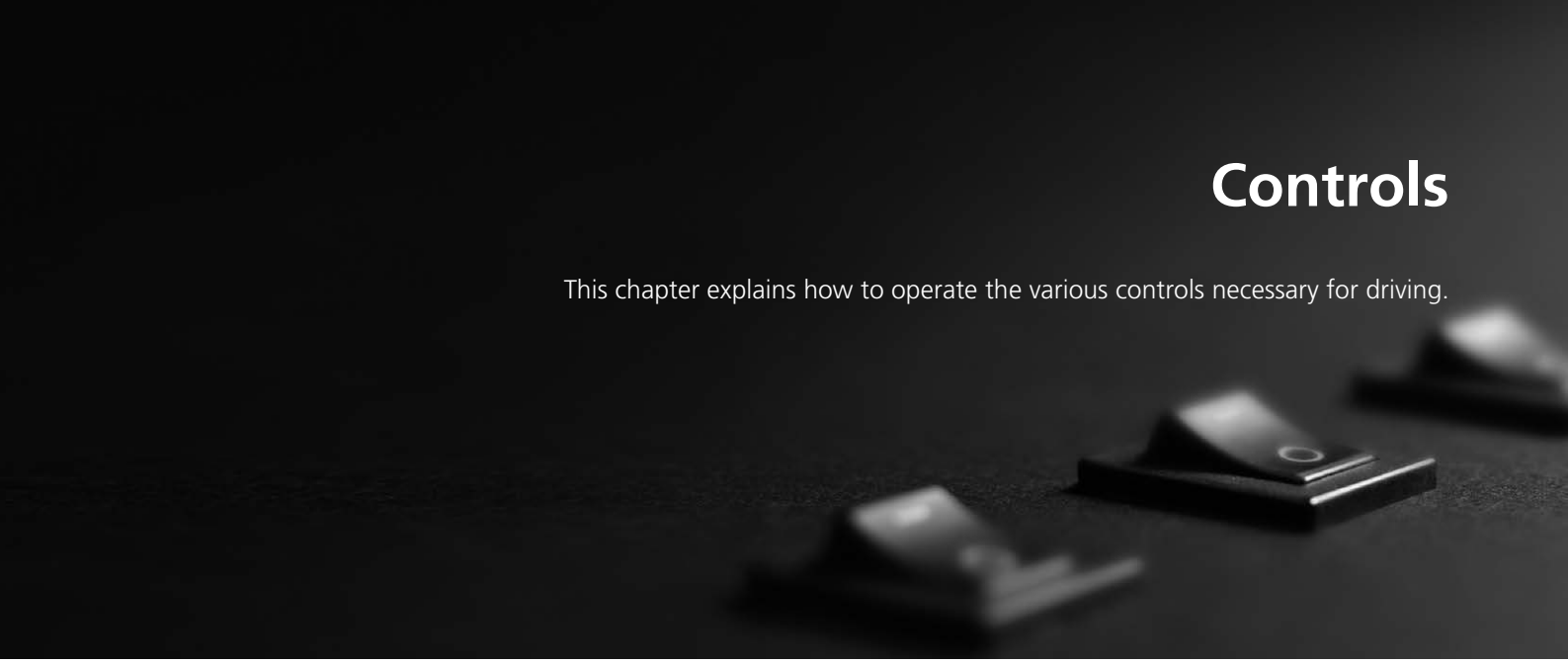

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Change gauge design

You can select the following design.
**Round:** Shows the speedometer and tachometer for round type.
**Bar:** Shows the speedometer and tachometer for bar type.
**Round minimal*1/Round (Cruise)*2:** Shows the speedometer and tachometer for round type while ACC with Low Speed Follow is not in operation.
**Bar minimal*1/Bar (Cruise)*2:** Shows the speedometer and tachometer for bar type while ACC with Low Speed Follow is not in operation.

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.




**Clock** ..... 166
**Locking and Unlocking the Doors**
Key ..... 167
Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength ..... 170
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..... 171
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ..... 179
Childproof Door Locks ..... 181
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 182
**Opening and Closing the Boot** ..... 183
**Security System**
Immobilizer System ..... 185
Security System Alarm ..... 186
**Windows** ..... 187
**Sunroof*** ..... 191
**Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel**
ENGINE START/STOP Button ..... 193
Lights ..... 196
Headlight Adjuster* ..... 201
Auto High-Beam ..... 202
Wipers and Washers ..... 205
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button ..... 207
Models with A-type meter
Brightness Control ..... 208
Models with B-type meter
Brightness Control ..... 209
Adjusting the Steering Wheel ..... 210
**Mirrors**
Interior Rearview Mirror ..... 211
Power Door Mirrors ..... 213
**Seats** ..... 215
**Interior Convenience Items** ..... 225
**Climate Control System** ..... 238


* Not available on all models

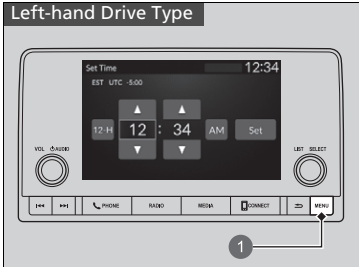
# Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

Models with colour audio system

## ■ Adjusting the Time

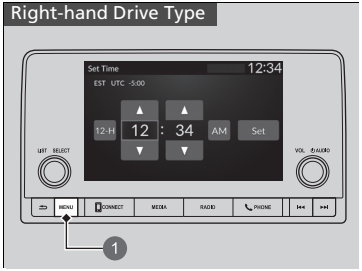
Left-hand Drive Type




1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Clock Settings**.
3. Select **Automatic Time**, then select **OFF**.
4. Select **Set Time**.
5. Select **12-H/24-H** to change 12 or 24 hour clock.
6. Select ▲ or ▼.
7. Select **Set** to set the time.

1 **MENU** Button

Right-hand Drive Type




1 **MENU** Button

Adjusting the Clock

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

**Clock Setup** P. 320

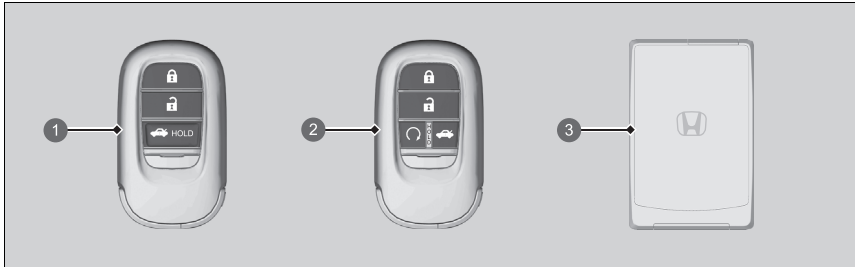
Adjusting the Time

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also select and enter with the **LIST / SELECT** (List / Selector) knob instead of the touch panel.

## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:




❶ Keyless Remote*1
❷ Keyless Remote*2
❸ Card Key*

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors, and fuel fill door.

*1: Models without keyless access system
*2: Models with keyless access system

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

**Immobilizer System** P. 185

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

**Models with remote engine starter**

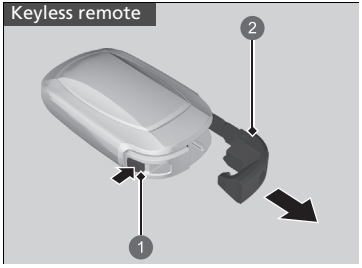
You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

**Remote Engine Start*** P. 415

## ■ Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote or card key* battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.

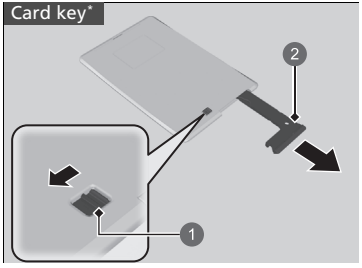
Keyless remote




To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

1 Release Button
2 Built-in Key

Card key*




To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the card key until it clicks.

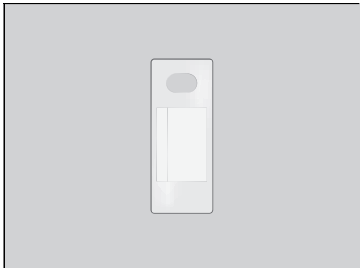
1 Release Knob
2 Built-in Key





* Not available on all models

## Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

# Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote or card key* when locking/unlocking* the doors and fuel fill door, opening* the boot, or starting the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking* the doors, opening* the boot, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote or card key* together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote or card key*.
- The card key* is in a cover or case that blocks radio waves.

## Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote or card key* and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote or card key* battery.
Battery life is about 2*1 or 1.5*2 years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote or card key* is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

### Keyless remote

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

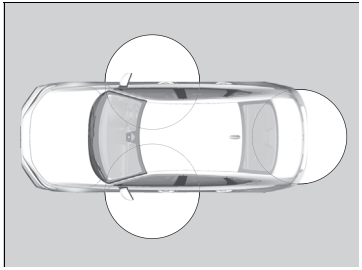
*1: Keyless remote
*2: Card key



 * Not available on all models

# Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

## ■ Using the Keyless Access System*



When you carry the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and open the boot.
You can lock/unlock the doors and fuel fill door within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or boot release button.

### Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 225

### Using the Keyless Access System*

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and boot will automatically relock.

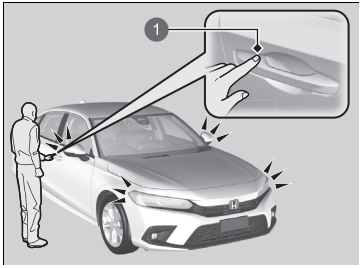
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Locking the doors and boot




❶ Door Lock Sensor

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

▶ All the doors and boot lock and the security system sets.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

### Using the Keyless Access System*

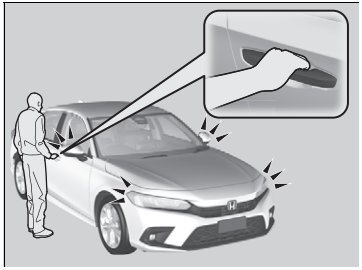
- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote or card key* if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Unlocking the doors and boot



African and Latin American models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

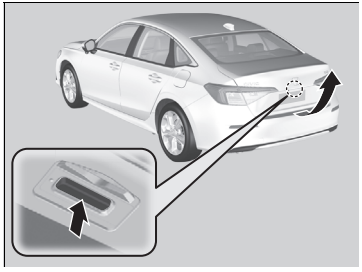
Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All doors and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Except African and Latin American models

Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the boot release button:

- ▶ The boot unlocks and opens.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

➡ **Using the Boot Release Button*** P. 184

Using the Keyless Access System*

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode* settings can be customized.

Models with colour audio

➡ **Settings*** P. 131

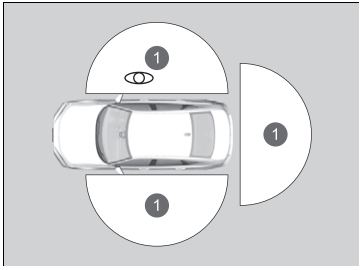
Models with Display Audio

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

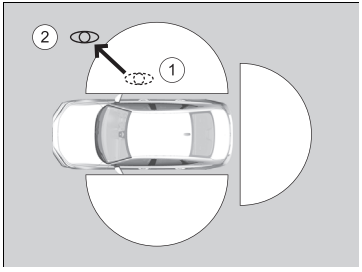


* Not available on all models

*Continued*




❶ The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m.




## ■ Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors closed while carrying the keyless remote or card key*, the doors will automatically lock. The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote or card key* is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or boot release button. Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote or card key* and close door(s).

**1.** While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

**2.** Carry the keyless remote or card key* beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

### Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface or the audio/information screen.
If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote or card key* will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

 * Not available on all models

To temporarily deactivate the function:

**1.** Set the power mode to OFF.
**2.** Open the driver's door.
**3.** Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote or card key* on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors (Walk away auto lock)

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

▶The beeper will not sound.

- The keyless remote or card key* is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.

▶The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote or card key* is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

**Auto lock function operation stop beeper**

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the boot.

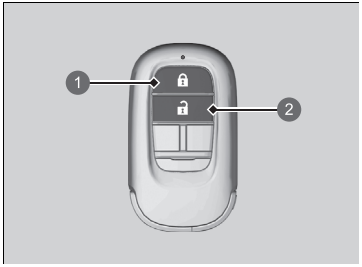
If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter




1 Lock Button
2 Unlock Button

### ■ Locking the doors

**Once:**

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

**Twice (within five seconds after the first push):**

▶ Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds, and verifies the security system is set.

### ■ Unlocking the doors

African and Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

**Once:**

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.

**Twice:**

▶ The remaining doors and boot unlock.

Except African and Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all the doors, boot, and fuel fill door unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 584

You can customize the door unlock mode* setting.

Models with colour audio

➡ **Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

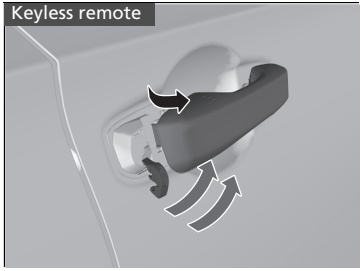
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

 * Not available on all models

## Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

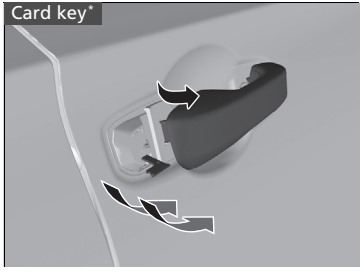
If the unlock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is on the back of the door handle.

Keyless remote



Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

Card key*



Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

Latin American models

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

African models

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds dose not unlock the remaining doors.

Except African and Latin American models

When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors unlock at the same time.

Except Latin American models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

You can customize the door unlock mode* setting.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

If the lock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, refer to the following.

**Locking a Door Without Using a Key** P. 178

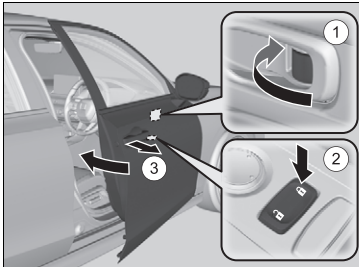


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.




### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

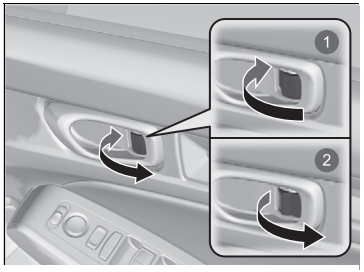




* Not available on all models

# Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

## ■ Using the Lock Tab




❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

### ■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

### ■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

Except African and Latin American models

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the boot, fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

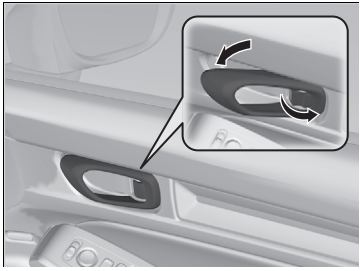
African and Latin American models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, the boot, and fuel fill door lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door and fuel fill door will unlock.



*Continued*

## ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



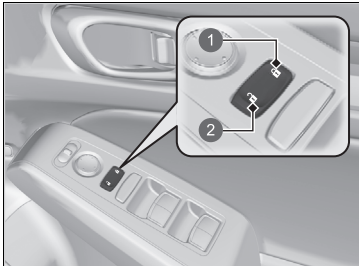
Pull the driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except Latin American and African models

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch




Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the boot.

❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

### Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The driver's door or passenger's door* inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 181

### Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master lock switch, all the other doors and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.



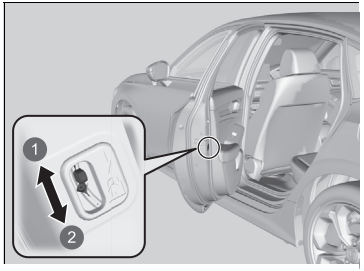


* Not available on all models

# Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

## ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks




❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

# Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

## ■ Auto Door Locking

### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

## ■ Auto Door Unlocking

### ■ Park unlock mode

African and Latin American models

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

Except African and Latin American models

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364





* Not available on all models

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

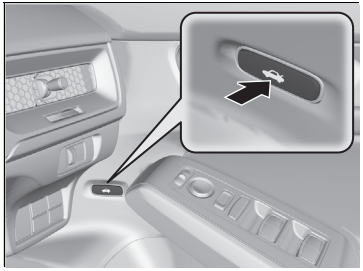
**■ Closing the boot**

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 89

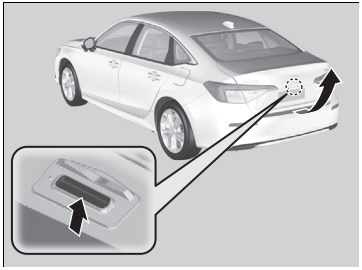
## Using the Boot Opener



Press and hold the boot opener on the driver's door to unlock and open the boot.

➡ **If You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 641

## Using the Boot Release Button*



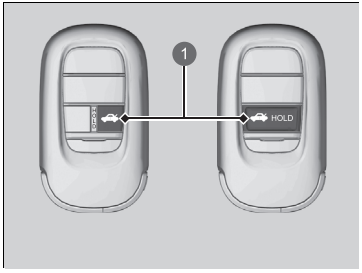
Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

**If You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 641

Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote or card key*.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

## Using the Remote Transmitter




Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

❶ Boot Release Button

### Using the Boot Release Button*

- If you forget the keyless remote or card key* inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote or card key* can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote or card key* away from the boot and close again.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the boot.

### Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.



 * Not available on all models

## Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:
- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

### Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

# Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the boot or doors are opened with the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and boot are locked from outside with the remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

**Security System Alarm**

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot opener.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

**Except Latin American models**

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.





* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

**⚠WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Auto-open/close function on all windows
Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Auto-open/close function on front windows
Opening driver's door cancels this function.

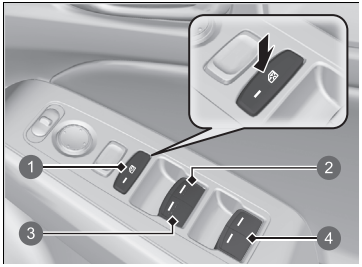
**Auto Reverse**
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

*Continued*

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function




1. Power Window Lock Button
2. Driver's Window Switch
3. Front Passenger's Window Switch
4. Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Automatic operation

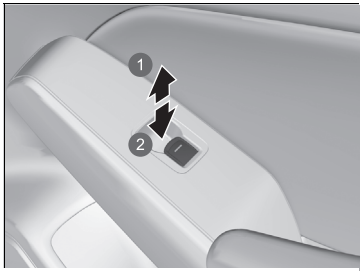
**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.
**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.



 * Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

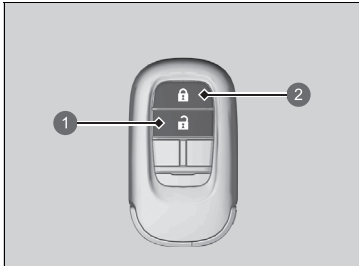



**To open:** Push the switch down.
**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

1 Close
2 Open

## Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*




**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

**To close*:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

1 Unlock Button
2 Lock Button

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*

Models with sunroof

If you open/close* the windows with the remote, the sunroof will open/close* automatically along with them.

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the remote setting using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

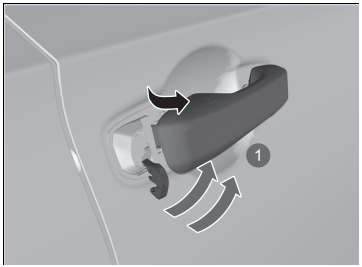
Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Opening the Windows with the Key*




**To open:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

1 Open

Opening the Windows with the Key*

Models with sunroof

If you open the windows with the key, the sunroof will open automatically along with them.

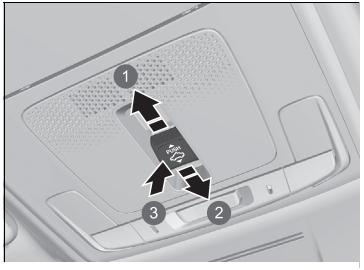


 * Not available on all models

# Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

## ■ Using the Sunroof Switch




❶ Open
❷ Close
❸ Tilt

### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Tilting the sunroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Sunroof*

**⚠WARNING**

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Auto-open/close function on front windows

Opening either front door cancels this function.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Sunroof*

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

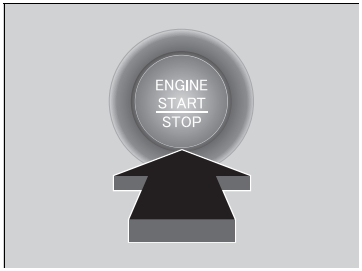
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*** P. 189
➡ **Opening the Windows with the Key*** P. 190

 * Not available on all models

# ENGINE START/STOP Button

## Changing the Power Mode




If you carry the keyless remote or card key* and press **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

**VEHICLE OFF:**
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
**ACCESSORY:**
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
**ON:**
All accessories can be used.

### ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the keyless remote or card key* is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **ENGINE START/ STOP** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system*. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

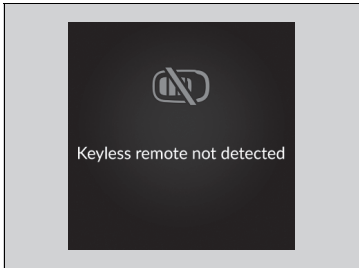
If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder




When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote or card key* in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

**Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder**

When the keyless remote or card key* is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote or card key* is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote or card key* on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

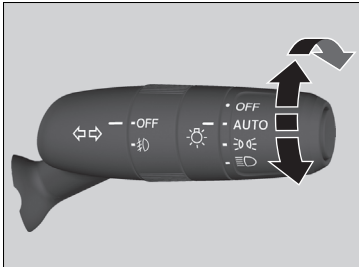


* Not available on all models

# Lights

## ■ Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.




The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Manual operation

**Headlights/position lights:**

Turn the light switch to .

**Position lights:**

Turn the light switch to .

**Headlight/position lights off:**

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the shift lever is in P and the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.

**Lights**

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Lights On Indicator** P. 103

**Headlights/Position Lights**

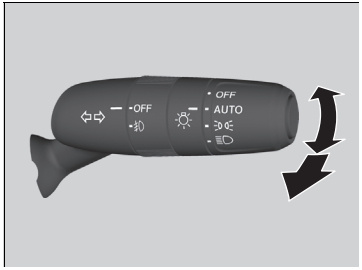
When the position lights are on, the tail and rear license plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to  or  and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

## ■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.




### ■ Flashing the high beams

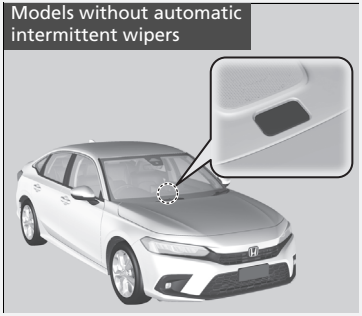
Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

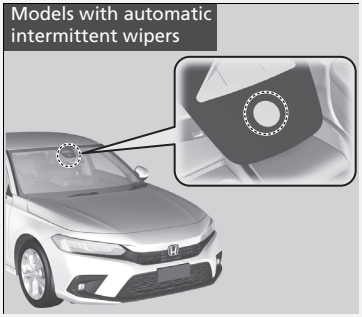
Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers

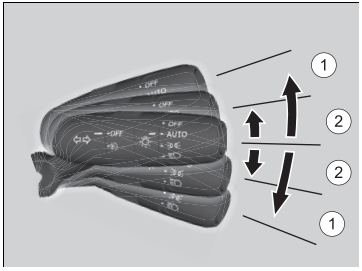


Models with automatic intermittent wipers



Continued

## ■ Turn Signals




The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

### ■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

➔ **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators** P. 103

## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote or card key* with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

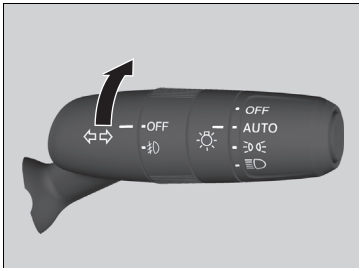
**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Fog Lights*




Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

## ■ Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

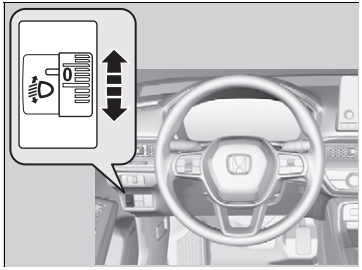
The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.





* Not available on all models

# Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the power mode is in ON.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

## ■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

| Condition | Dial position |
|---|---|
| A driver | 0 |
| A driver and a front passenger | |
| Five persons in the front and rear seats | 1 |
| Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight | 2 |
| A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight | 3 |

Headlight Adjuster*

**Models with halogen headlights**

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No.48 Dover Regulation.

**Models with LED headlights**

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

**Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 442

**Models with LED headlights**

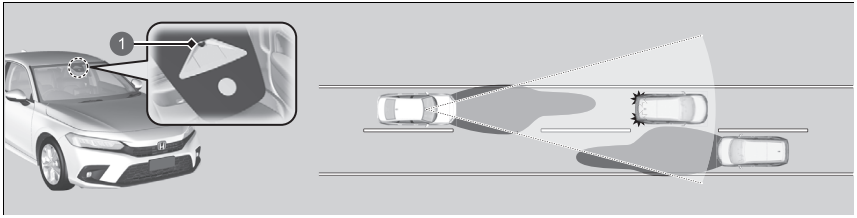
Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

# Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.




❶ Front Wide View Camera

## ■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.




- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

### Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

For the auto high-beam to work properly:
- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

### ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

| Switching to high beam: | Switching to low beam: |
|---|---|
| All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.<br>• Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.<br>• There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.<br>• There are few street lights on the road ahead. | One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.<br>• Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.<br>• There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.<br>• There are many street lights on the road ahead. |

#### Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

*Continued*

### ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

**Using the lever:**

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

**Using the light switch:**

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Auto High-Beam

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

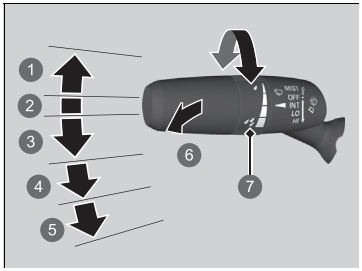




* Not available on all models

# Wipers and Washers

## ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers




❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
❹ **LO**: Low speed wipe
❺ **HI**: High speed wipe
❻ **Washer**
❼ Intermittent Time Adjustment Ring[*]

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT[*1]/AUTO[*2], LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

### ■ Adjusting wiper operation[*]

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

[*] Not available on all models

*Continued*

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

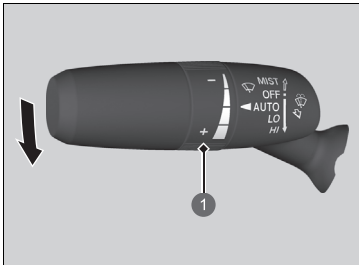
If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the **LO** setting become the same.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

## ■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*




1 Adjustment Ring

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

**Sensor sensitivity**

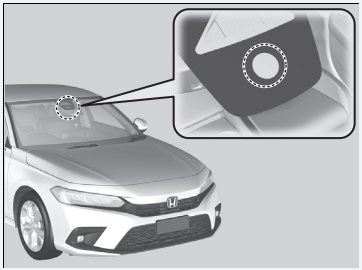



Low Sensitivity

High Sensitivity

### Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



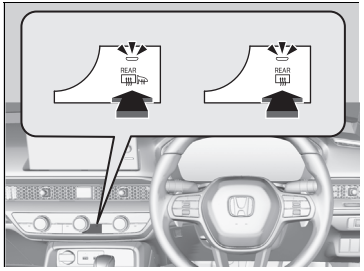
NOTICE

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

 * Not available on all models

# Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button




Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is stopped. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

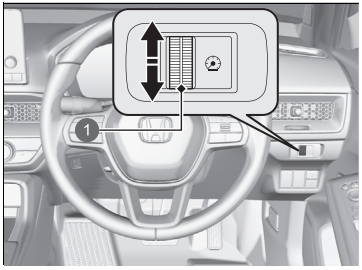
When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.



* Not available on all models

Models with A-type meter

# Brightness Control




1 Control Dial

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.
**Brighten:** Turn the dial up.
**Dim:** Turn the dial down.

You will hear a beep* when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.




### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on and it is dark outside.

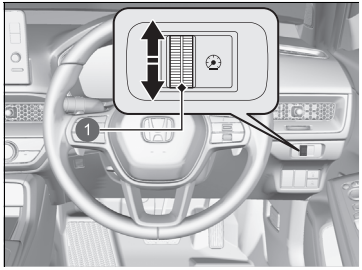




* Not available on all models

Models with B-type meter

# Brightness Control




❶ Control Dial

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

### ■ Adjusting the brightness manually

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the dial up.

**Dim:** Turn the dial down.

▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.




### ■ Brightness level indicator

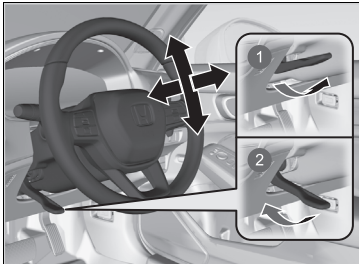
The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

# Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.




❶ To lock
❷ To adjust

**1.** While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
**2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
**3.** Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

**⚠WARNING**

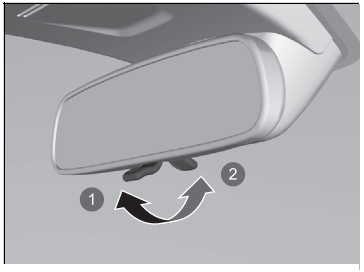
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*




Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

❶ Night Position
❷ Daytime Position

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

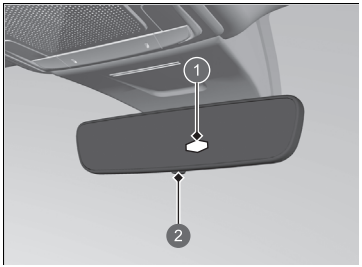
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 215



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*




When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

1 Sensor
2 Auto Button

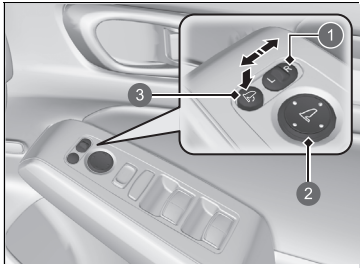
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.



 * Not available on all models

# Power Door Mirrors




1 Selector Switch
2 Adjustment Switch
3 Folding Button*

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors***

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock sensor* on front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

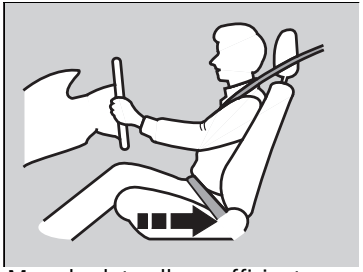
**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.



 * Not available on all models

## Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

**⚠WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

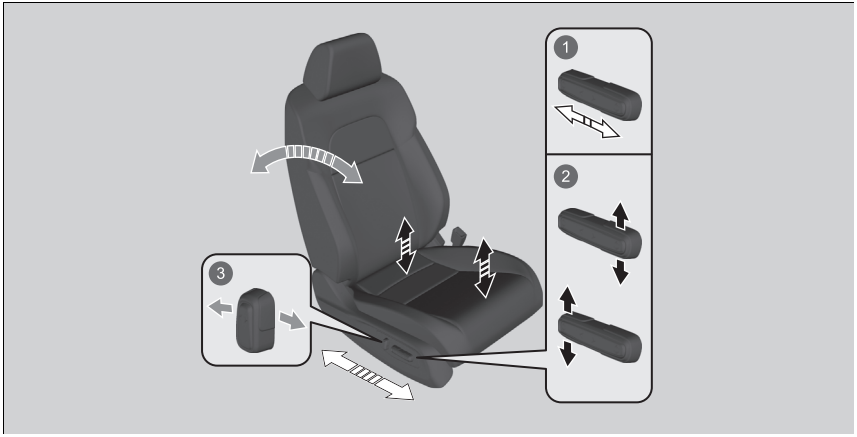
**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.**

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

*Continued*

## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

### ■ Adjusting the front power seats*




❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Slide the lever to move the seat.

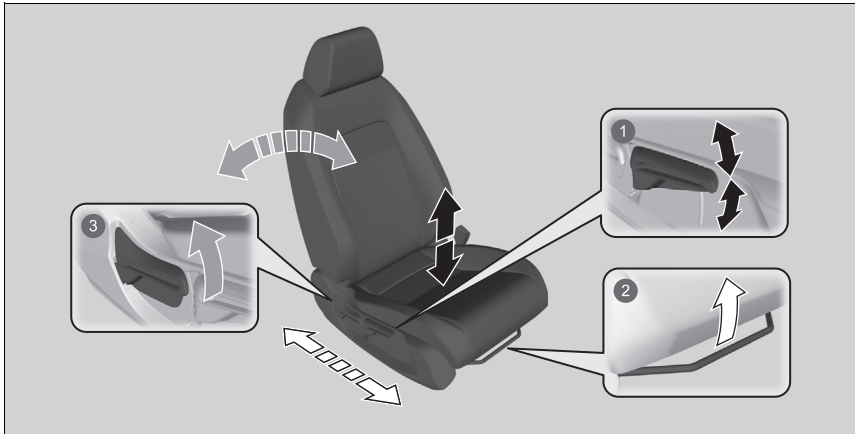
❷ **Height Adjustment (Driver side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

❸ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Push forward or pull backward the lever to change the angle.



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seat*




❶ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

❷ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

❸ **Height Adjustment (Driver side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the front manual seat*

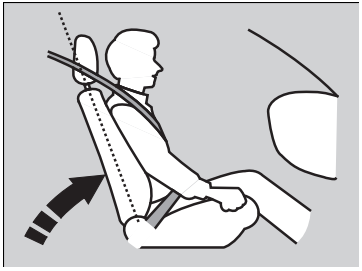
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

**⚠WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

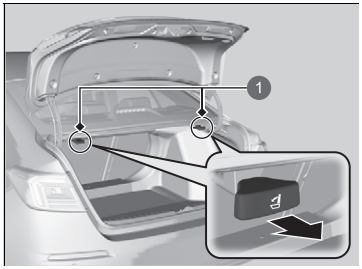
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

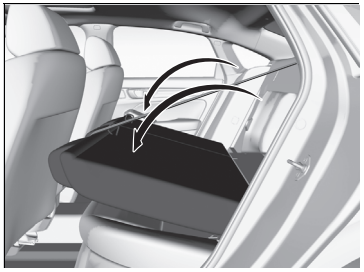
# Rear Seats

## Folding Down the Rear Seats*




1. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.

1 Release Lever



2. Fold the seat-back down.

Folding Down the Rear Seats*

The rear seat-back(s*) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

**Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 89

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

**Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

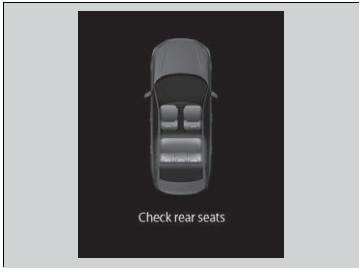


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.




A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364





* Not available on all models

# Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

**⚠WARNING**

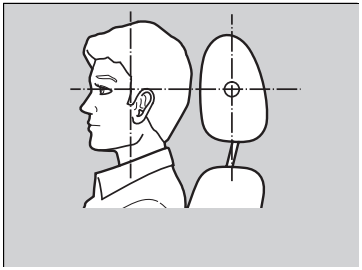
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

# Head Restraints

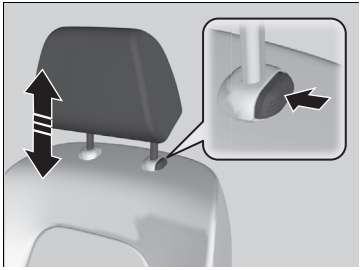
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

## ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:**
Pull it upward.
**To lower the head restraint:**
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

**⚠WARNING**

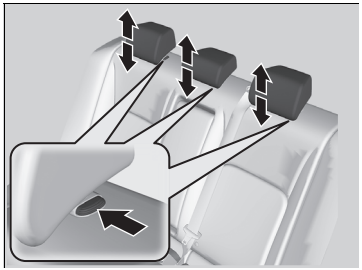
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the head restraint:**
Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**
Push it down while pressing the release button.

## Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

**To remove a head restraint:**
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

**To reinstall a head restraint:**
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

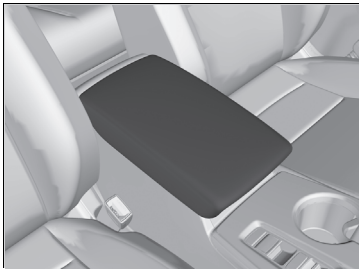
**⚠WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

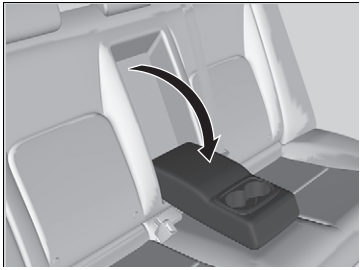
# Armrest

## ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

## ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest

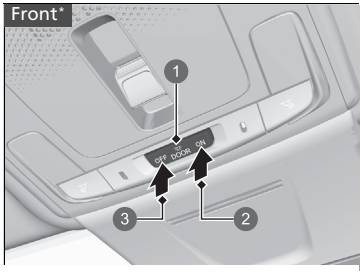


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

# Interior Lights

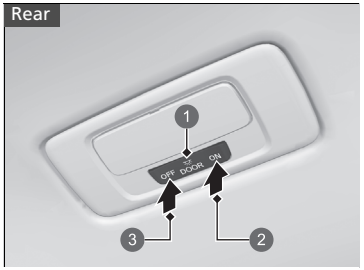
## ■ Interior Light Switches

Front*




❶ Door Activated Position
❷ On
❸ Off

Rear




❶ Door Activated Position
❷ On
❸ Off

### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with colour audio

**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio

**How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 364

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

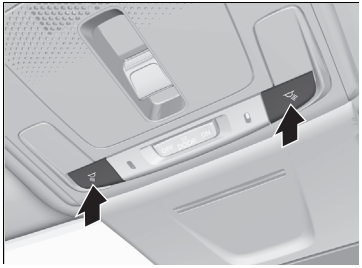
To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the switches.

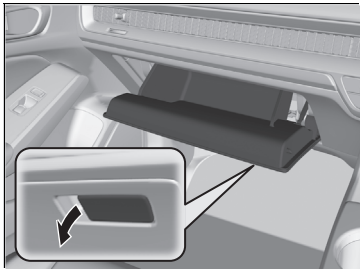
Map Light Switches

Models with sunroof

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the switches.

# Storage Items

## Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Glove Box

**⚠WARNING**

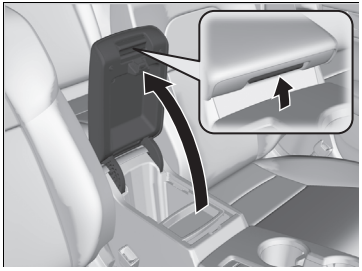
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

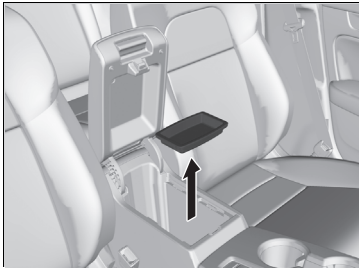


*Continued*

## ■ Console Compartment



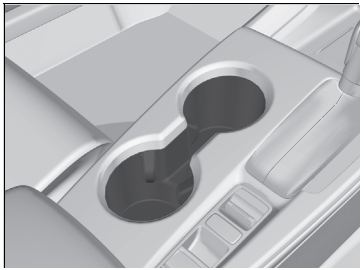
Pull the handle to open the console box.



**■ Removable tray**

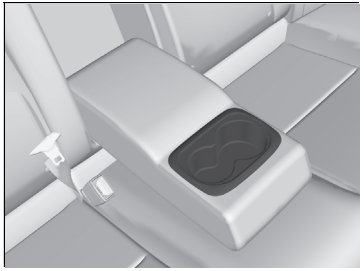
The tray in the console compartment is detachable. To remove the tray, simply pull it up.

## Beverage Holders



### Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



### Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.



### Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.

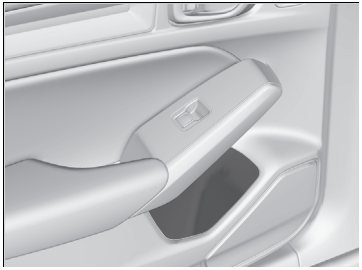
Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

*Continued*



■ **Rear door side beverage holders**
Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

## ■ Coat Hook*



There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle.

Coat Hook*

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.





* Not available on all models

## Sunglasses Holder*



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

Sunglasses Holder*

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.



* Not available on all models

# Other Interior Convenience Items

## ■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



**■ Console panel**

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

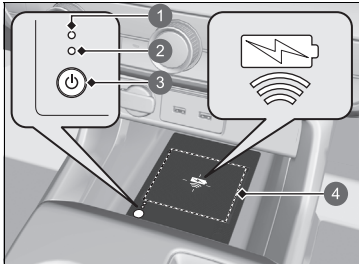
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine is running.

When the power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the power socket.

## ■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:




1. Amber Indicator
2. Green Indicator
3. (Power) Button
4. Charging Area

**1.** To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
**2.** Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
**3.** When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

**⚠CAUTION**

**Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.**

- **Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.**
- **Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.**
- **Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.**
- **Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.**
- **Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.**
- **Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.**

In order to use safely:
- Remove any metal objects from the charge pad before charging a device.
- Do not open the charger case.
- Do not use the charger if it malfunctions. Contact your dealer.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

| Indicator | | Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|
| Green & Amber | Blinking simulta-neously | There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device. | Remove the obstacle(s). |
| | | The device is not within the charging area. | Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located. |
| | | The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases. | Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again. |
| Amber | Blinking | The wireless charger is faulty. | Contact a dealer for repairs. |

Wireless Charger*

If the charger interferes with radio communications, attempt to correct the interference:

- Press and hold the switch on the charger for a few seconds to turn off the charger.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.



* Not available on all models

## Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15 W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

**NOTICE**

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

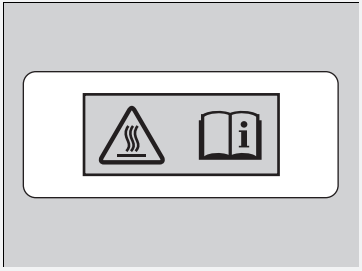
## Wireless Charger*

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the boot are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.



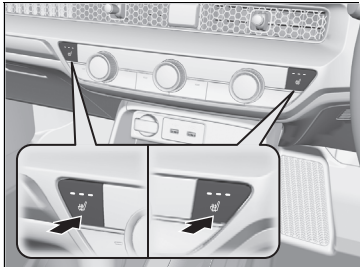
Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

 * Not available on all models

## Front Seat Heaters*



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

**⚠WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is stop. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.



* Not available on all models

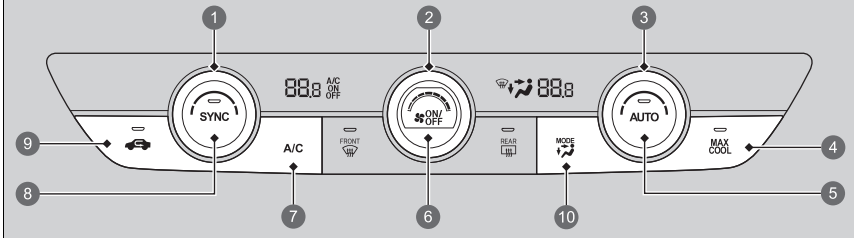
## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated* or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the engine is running.

**1.** Press the **AUTO** button.
**2.** Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
**3.** Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Models with SYNC button and MAX COOL button




❶ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial*1
❷ Fan Control Dial
❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial*1
❹ **MAX COOL** Button*1
❺ **AUTO** Button*1
❻ **ON/OFF** Button
❼ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
❽ **SYNC** Button*1
❾ Recirculation Button*1
❿ **MODE** Button*1

- Air flows from dashboard vents
- Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
- Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

* Not available on all models

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

**Models without MAX COOL button**

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

**Models with MAX COOL button**

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

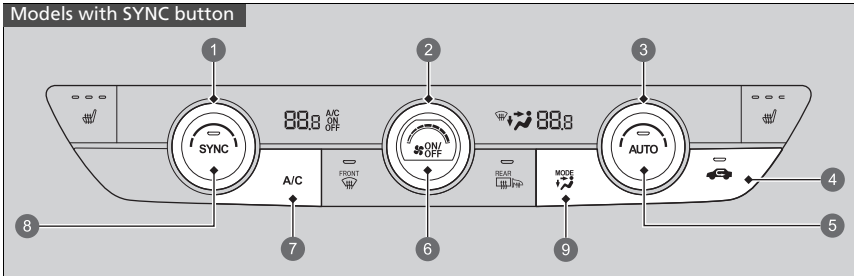
**Models with heater core**

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

**Models without heater core**

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **28** is displayed.

Models with SYNC button




1. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
2. Fan Control Dial
3. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
4. Recirculation Button
5. **AUTO** Button
6. **ON/OFF** Button
7. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
8. **SYNC** Button
9. **MODE** Button
   - Air flows from dashboard vents
   - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
   - Air flows from floor vents
   - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

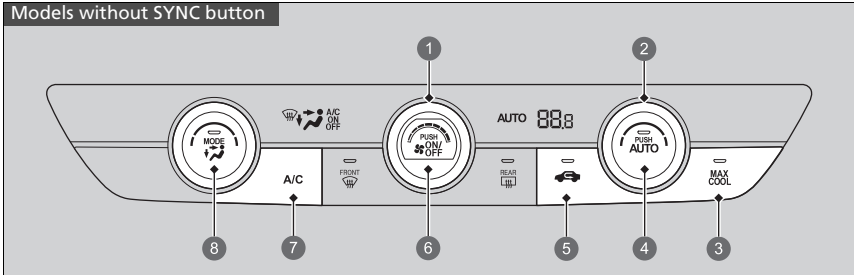
Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

*Continued*

Models without SYNC button




1. Fan Control Dial
2. Temperature Control Dial*1
3. **MAX COOL** Button*1
4. **AUTO** Button*1
5. Recirculation Button*1
6. **ON/OFF** Button
7. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
8. **MODE** Control Dial*1
   - Air flows from dashboard vents
   - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
   - Air flows from floor vents
   - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

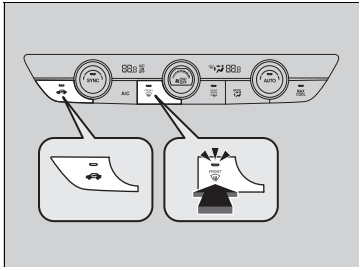
### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Except African models

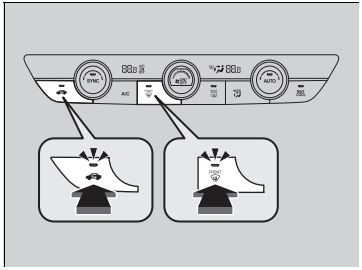
Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on.
Press the button (indicator off) to switch the fresh air mode.

African models

Pressing the FRONT button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



**1.** Press the FRONT button (indicator on).
**2.** Press the button (indicator on).

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

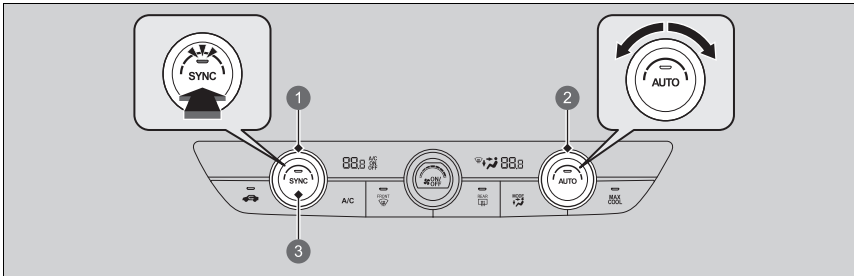
*Continued*

## ■ Synchronization Mode*

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

**1.** Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
**2.** Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.




1. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
2. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. **SYNC** Button

Synchronization Mode*

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

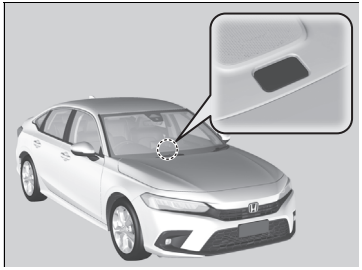
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.





* Not available on all models

## Automatic Climate Control Sensor



The automatic climate control system is equipped with a sensor. Do not cover or spill any liquid on it.

# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

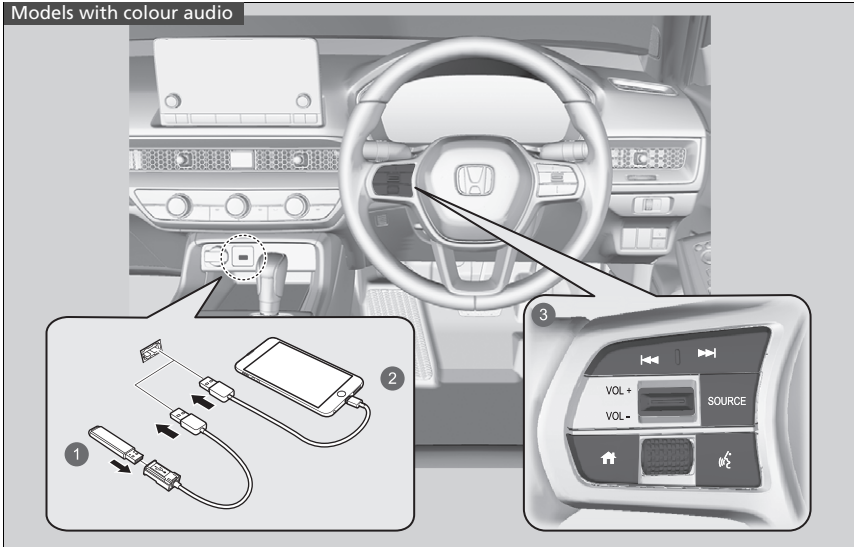
**Audio System**..... 246
**Colour Audio**..... 249
**Display Audio** ..... 304
**Audio Error Messages**..... 394
**General Information on the Audio System**..... 396

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

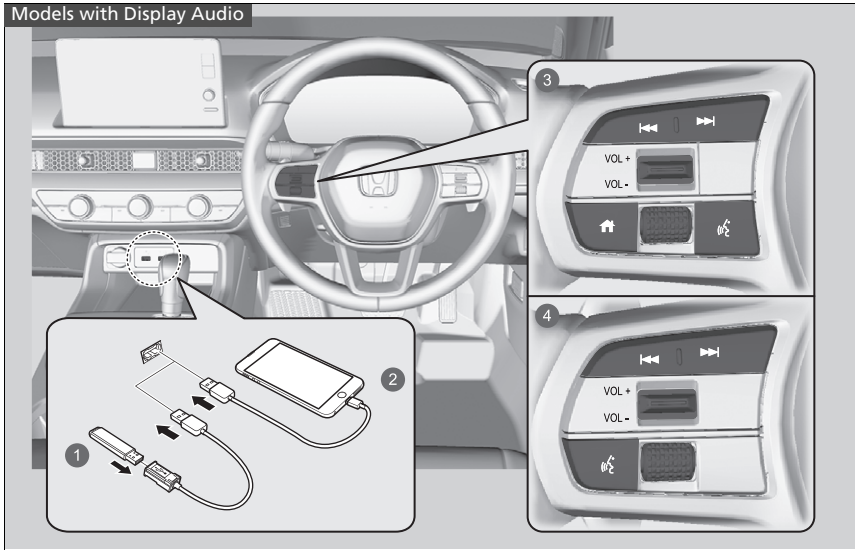
Models with colour audio




1 USB Flash Drive
2 iPod
3 Remote Controls

About Your Audio System

iPod®, iPhone® and iTunes® are trademarks of Apple Inc.




❶ USB Flash Drive
❷ iPod
❸ Remote Controls*1
❹ Remote Controls*2

*1 : Models with A-type meter
*2 : Models with B-type meter

# Audio System Theft Protection*

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

**1.** Set the power mode to ON.
**2.** Turn on the audio system.
**3.** Press and hold the **VOL/ ⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

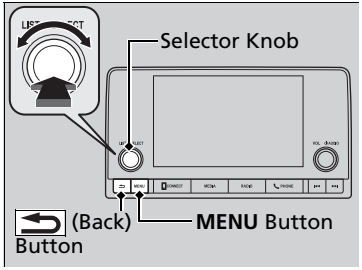


 * Not available on all models

# Basic Operation

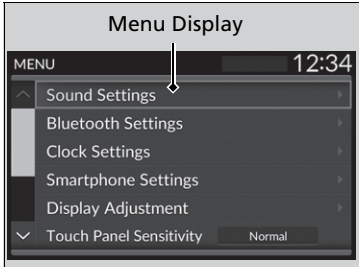
## Audio System Function

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.




Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.




**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU button:** Press to display the menu screen.

**(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

Colour Audio

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Menu Items

- **Adjust Clock** P. 166
- **Adjusting the Sound** P. 252
- **Display Setup** P. 253
- **Customized Features** P. 276

Press the buttons on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 251

**Touchscreen operation**

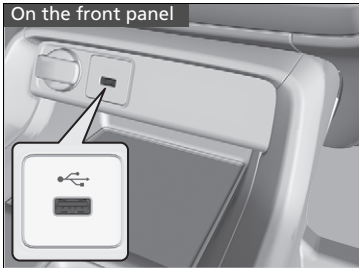
- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

- **Customized Features** P. 276

Continued

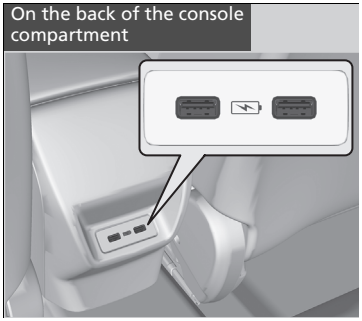
## ■ USB Port(s)




### ■ On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.




### ■ On the back of the console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

**USB Port(s)**

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

**USB charge**

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

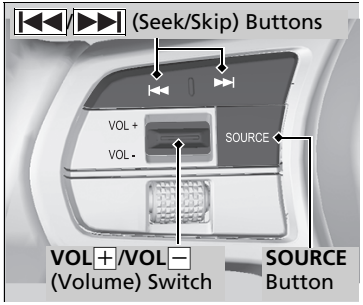




* Not available on all models

## ■ Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.




**SOURCE Button**
Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM→AM→USB/iPod/Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto→*Bluetooth*® Audio

**VOL+/VOL− (Volume) Switch**
**Press Up:** To increase the volume.
**Press Down:** To decrease the volume.

**|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons**

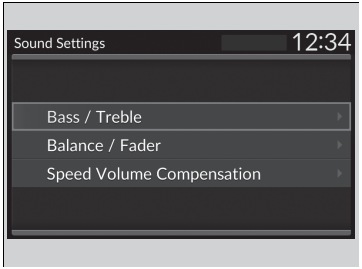
- When listening to the radio
  **Press |▶▶|:** To select the next preset radio station.
  **Press |◀◀|:** To select the previous preset radio station.
  **Press and hold |▶▶|:** To select the next strong station.
  **Press and hold |◀◀|:** To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  **Press |▶▶|:** To skip to the next song.
  **Press |◀◀|:** To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  **Press and hold |▶▶|:** To skip to the next folder/group.
  **Press and hold |◀◀|:** To go back to the previous folder/group.

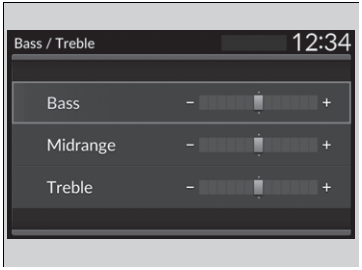
Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

# Adjusting the Sound




**1.** Select an audio source.
**2.** Press the **MENU** button.
**3.** Select **Sound Settings**.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)

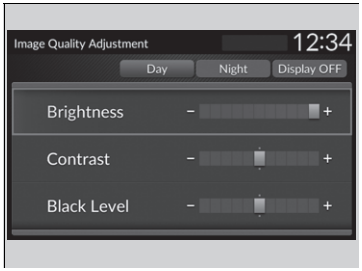
Adjusting the Sound

The SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

# Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes.

## ■ Changing the Screen Brightness




**1.** Press the **MENU** button.
**2.** Select **Display Adjustment**.
**3.** Select **Day** or **Night**.
**4.** Select the setting you want.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

You can adjust the settings by sliding or tapping on the bar.

# Playing AM/FM Radio




**Audio/Information Screen**

**Selector Knob**
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**(Back) Button**
Press to go back to the previous display.

**Seek Buttons**
Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

**MENU Button**
Press to display the menu items.

**RADIO Button**
Press to select a band.

**Preset Icons**
Tune the radio frequency for preset memory.
Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
Select > to display beyond preset 5.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

**1.** Press ⌯ while listening to a radio.
**2.** Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Press ⌯ while listening to a radio.
**2.** Select **Refresh**.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
**1.** Select **Scan**.

To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the ⮌ button.

Playing AM/FM Radio

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

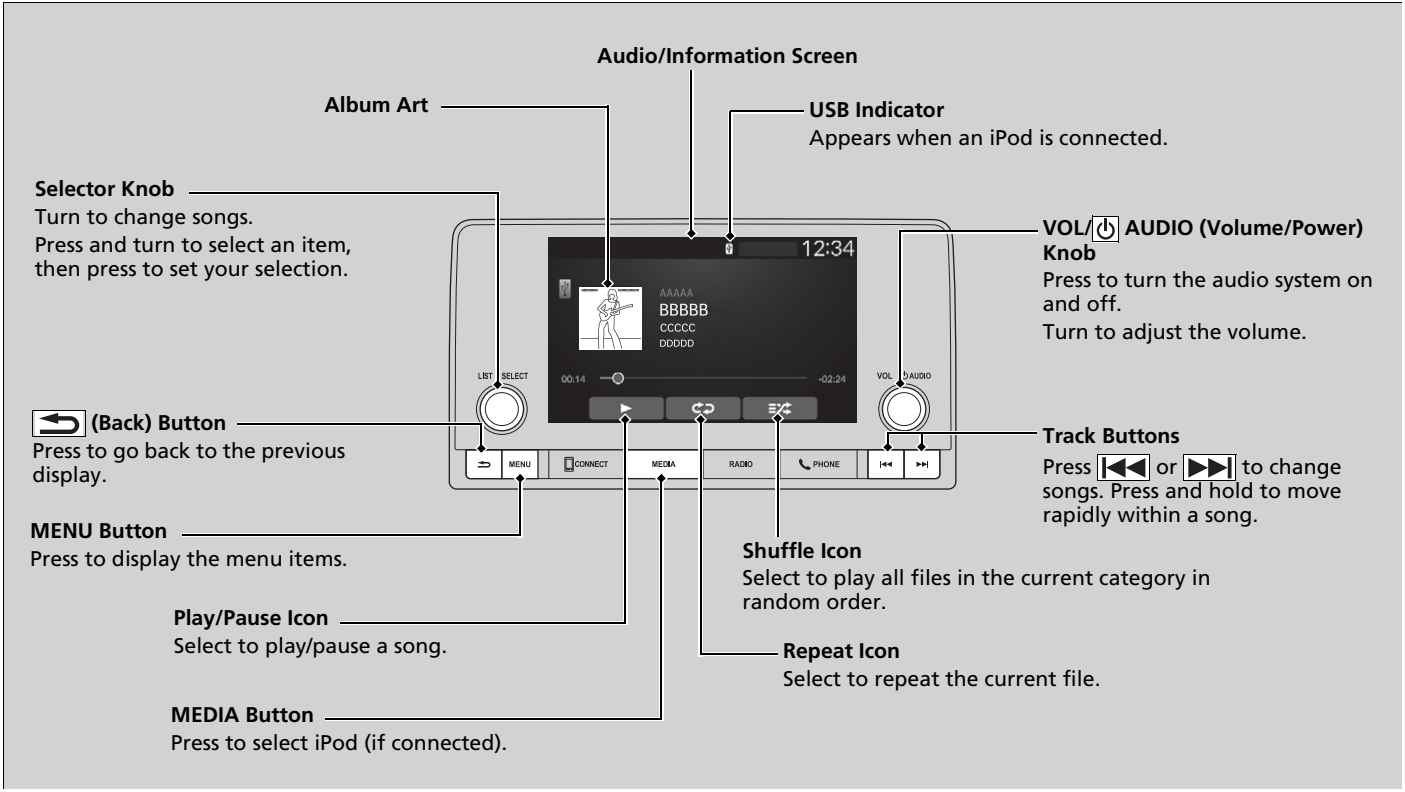
You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 251

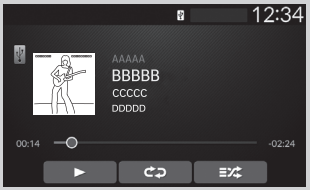
# Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

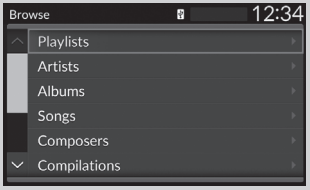
**USB Port(s)** P. 250



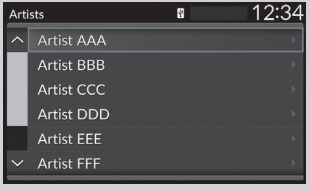
## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List




Category Selection




Item Selection




**1.** Press ♨ to display the iPod music list.

**2.** Select a category.

**3.** Select an item.
▶ Select an item repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

Playing an iPod

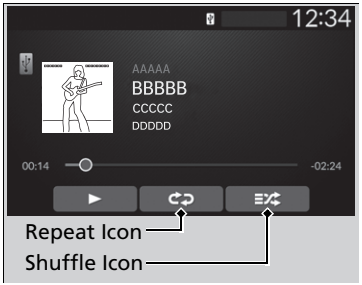
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 394

*Continued*

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.




### ■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle**

**Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Repeat**

**Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.

**Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

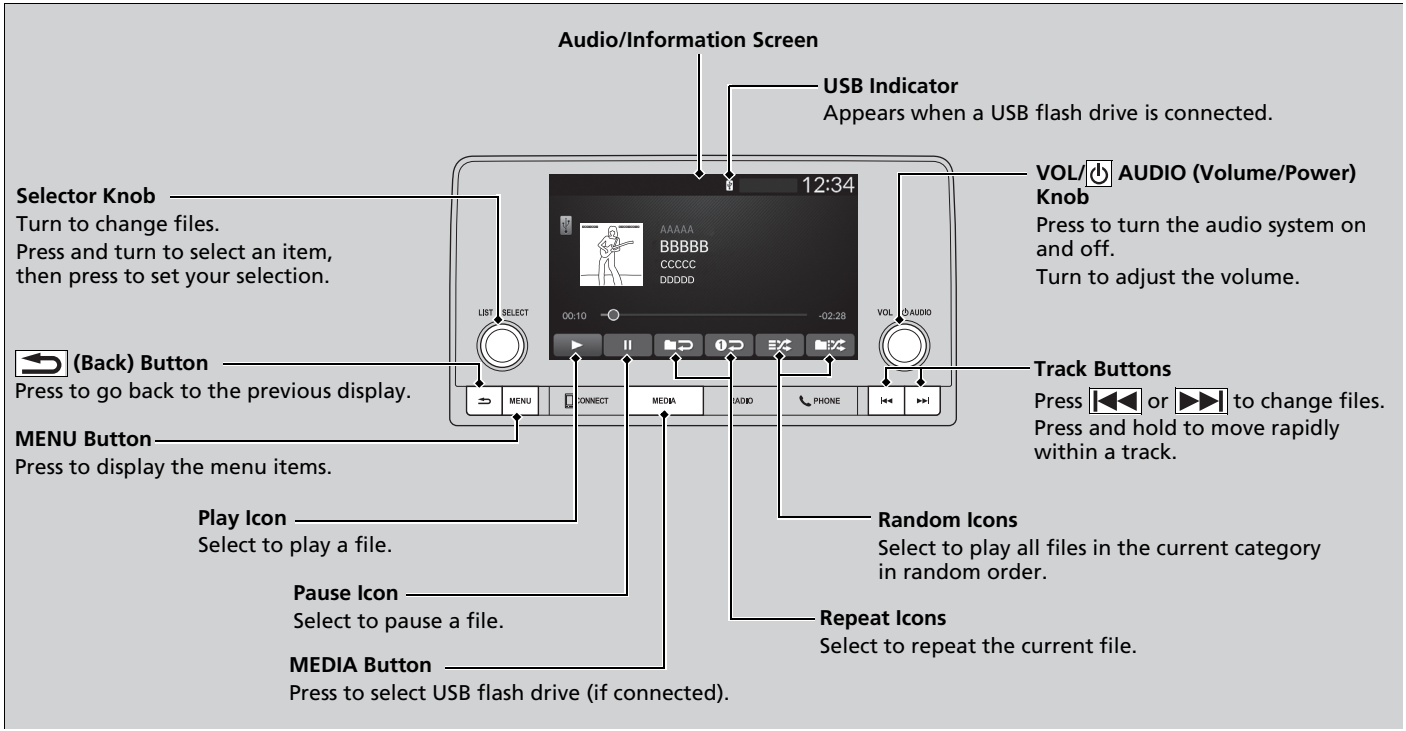
**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.

# Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

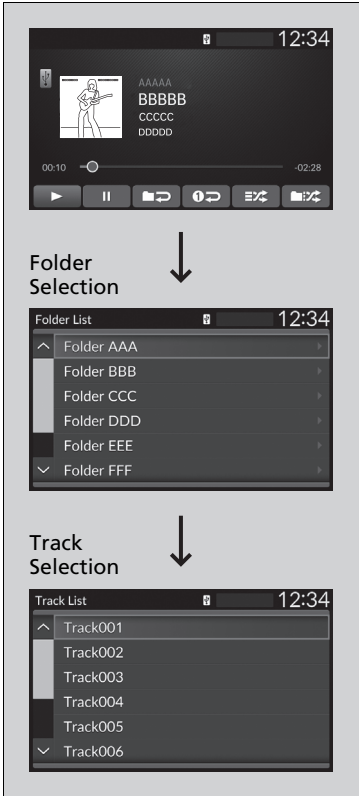
**USB Port(s)** P. 250






*Continued*

## How to Select a File from a Folder




**1.** Press ⌯ to display a folder list.

**2.** Select a folder.

**3.** Select a file.

### Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 396

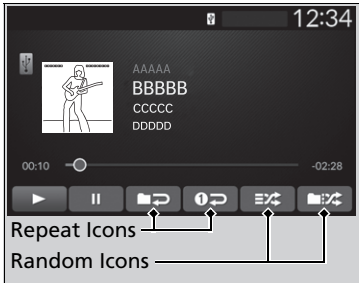
Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 394

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.




### ■ Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Random**

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Repeat**

**Repeat track:** Repeats the current file.

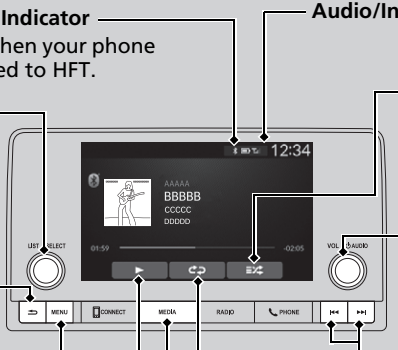
**Repeat folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

# Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 289




***Bluetooth* Indicator**
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Selector Knob**
Turn to change files.
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

**Shuffle Icon**
Select to play all files in the current category in random order.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**(Back) Button**
Press to go back to the previous display.

**MENU Button**
Press to display the menu items.

**Repeat Icon**
Select to repeat the current file.

**Track Buttons**
Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to change files.

**Play/Pause Icon**
Select to play/pause a file.

**MEDIA Button**
Press to select *Bluetooth*® Audio.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the **Bluetooth Settings** menu.

**HFT Menus** P. 287

To change the searched phone manually, select **Go to Device List**.

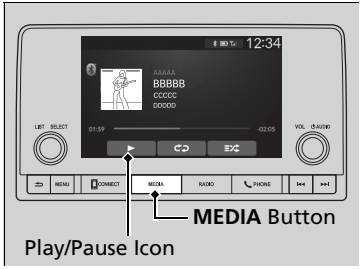
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Audio** from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

**Phone Setup** P. 289

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files




1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

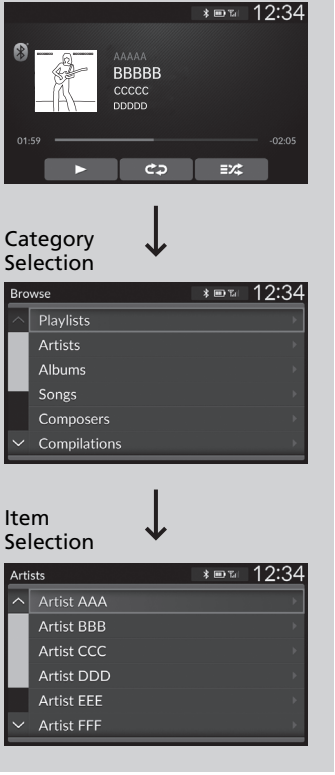
If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Check the volume setting of your phone if the audio volume is too loud or soft.

*Continued*

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List




**1.** Press ⏳ to display the music search list.

**2.** Select a category.

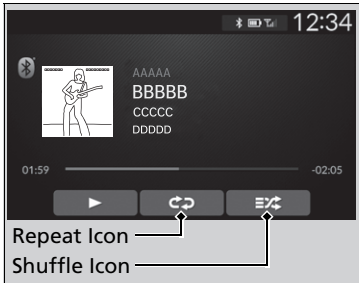
**3.** Select an item.
▶ Select an item repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.




### ■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle**

**Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

**Repeat**

**Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.

**Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.

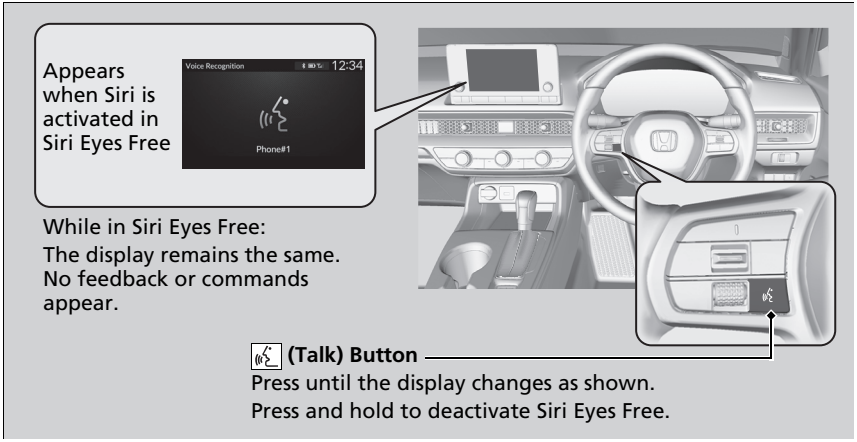
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

# Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 289

## ■ Using Siri Eyes Free




### Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free mode while operating a vehicle.

### Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

# Smartphone Voice Recognition

You can use Smartphone Voice Recognition using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your Android phone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 289

## Using Smartphone Voice Recognition




### Using Smartphone Voice Recognition

Depending on your Android phone, you may need to operate your phone.

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

# Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the front USB, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

**USB Port(s)** P. 250

## ■ Apple CarPlay Menu

Apple CarPlay menu screen




Go back to the audio screen

**CONNECT** Button
Press to display Apple CarPlay screen

: Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen

: Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen

### Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, press the **PHONE** button. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT), turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

**Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 270

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

**Phone Setup** P. 289

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ **Phone**
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ **Messages**
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ **Music**
Play music stored on your iPhone.

■ **Maps**
Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Apple CarPlay

**Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

To adjust the ring tone volume, the guidance volume of the navigation or Siri, or the audio volume, turn the **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the sound you want to adjust is playing.



*Continued*

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the front USB, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

## ■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

**1.** Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
**USB Port(s)** P. 250
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
**2.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

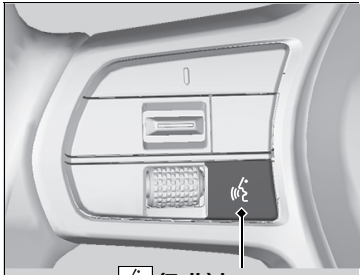
Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Press the **MENU** button→
Select Smartphone Settings→Apple CarPlay
→Select device

**Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press the talk button to activate Siri.



**(Talk) button:**
Press to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

To adjust the guidance volume of Siri, turn the **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while Siri is activated.

# Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

**USB Port(s)** P. 250

**Auto Pairing Connection** P. 274

**NOTE:**

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

## Android Auto

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.

*Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

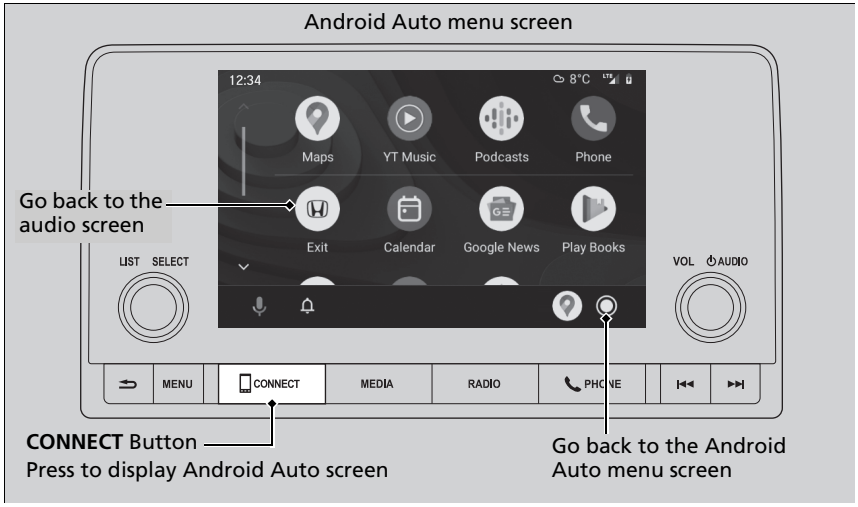
Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

**Phone Setup** P. 289

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

## Android Auto Menu




- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Exit**
- 
  Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

**Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

To adjust the ring tone volume, the guidance volume of the navigation or voice recognition, or the audio volume, turn the **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the sound you want to adjust is playing.

*Continued*

- 🔔
  You can check Android notifications.
- ◯ (Android Auto Home)
  Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

## ■ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

### Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

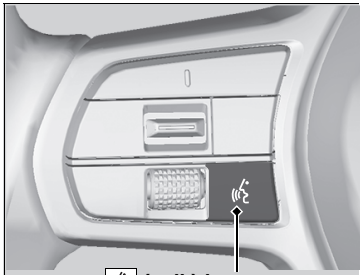
Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the **MENU** button → Select Smartphone Settings → Android Auto → Select device

**Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

## Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



**(Talk) button:**
Press to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press again to deactivate voice recognition.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type
*2: Left-hand Drive Type

### Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the icon in the lower-left*1/right*2 corner of the screen.

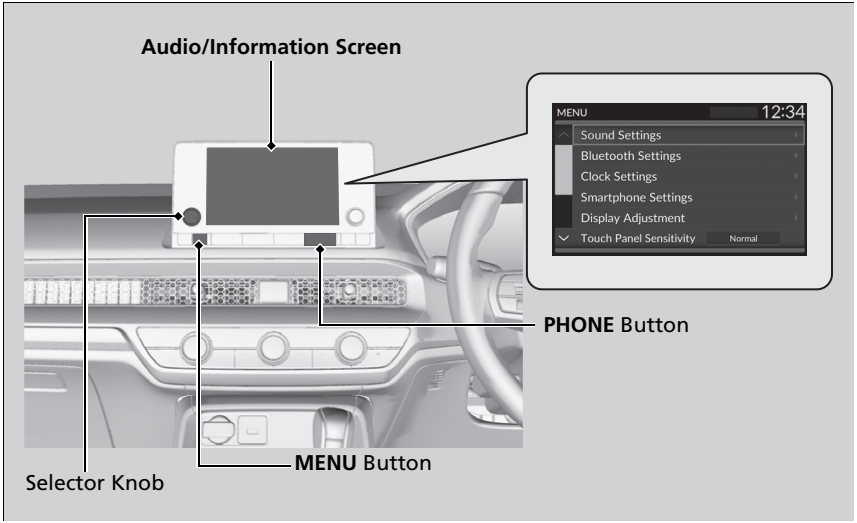
To adjust the guidance volume of voice recognition, turn the **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the guidance is playing.

# Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

## ■ How to Customize the Settings

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **MENU** button. To customize the phone settings, press the **PHONE** button, then select **Settings**.




### Customized Features

When you customize settings:

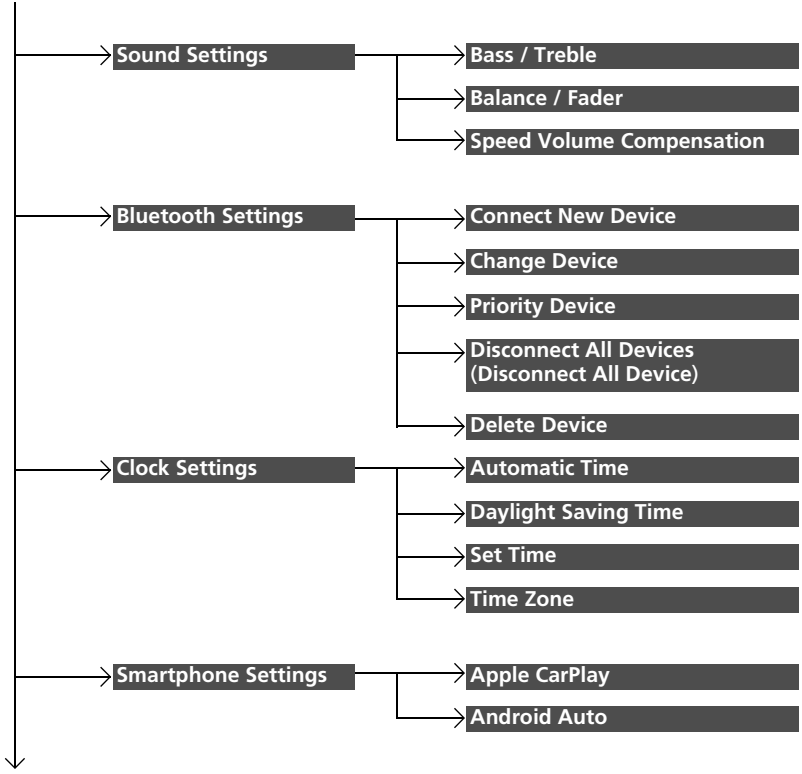
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

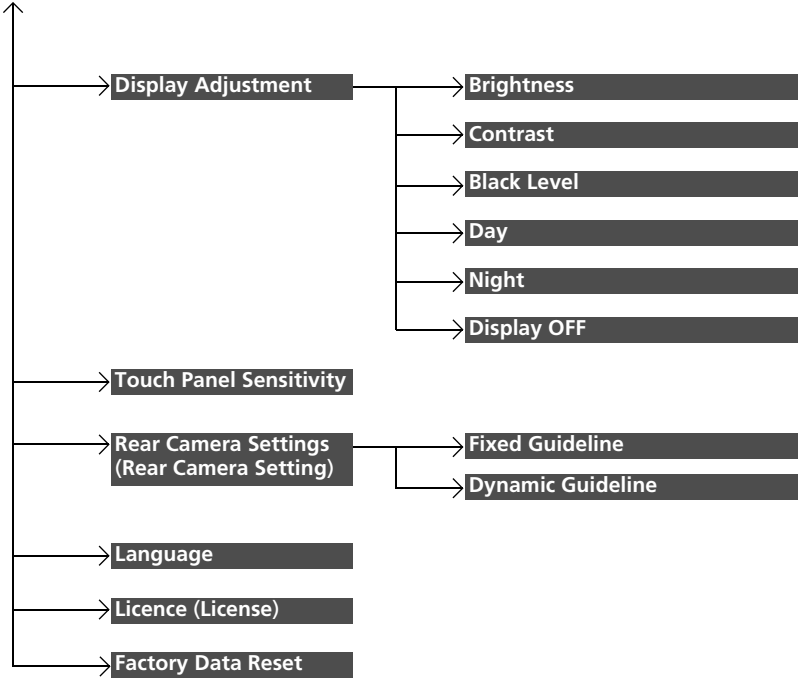
To customize features detail, refer to the following.

➔ **Customization Flow** P. 277
➔ **List of customizable options** P. 280

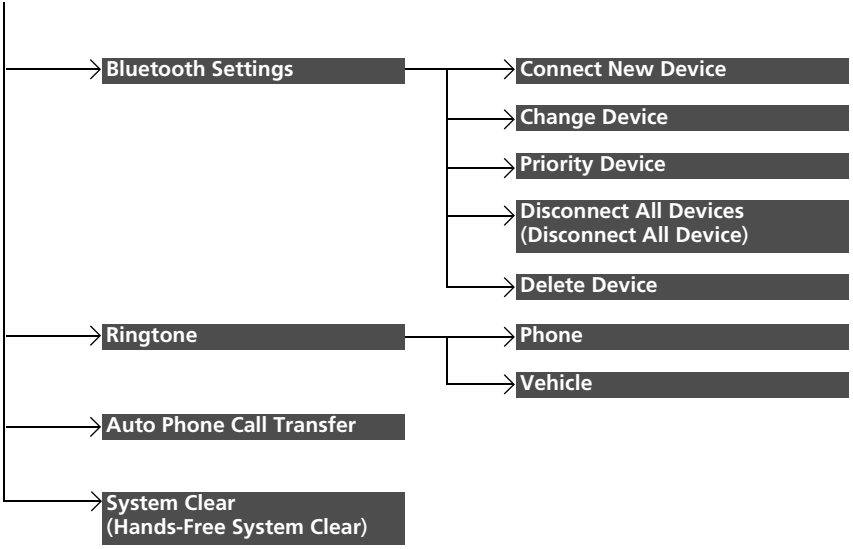
## ■ Customization Flow

Press the **MENU** button.




Display Adjustment
Brightness
Contrast
Black Level
Day
Night
Display OFF
Touch Panel Sensitivity
Rear Camera Settings (Rear Camera Setting)
Fixed Guideline
Dynamic Guideline
Language
Licence (License)
Factory Data Reset

Press the **PHONE** button and select **Settings**.



■ **List of customizable options**

Press the **MENU** button.

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Sound Settings** | **Bass / Treble**<br>**Balance / Fader**<br>**Speed Volume Compensation** | Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.<br>➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 252 | — |
| **Bluetooth Settings** | **Connect New Device** | Pairs a new phone to HFT.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 289 | — |
| | **Change Device** | Connects a paired phone.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 289 | — |
| | **Priority Device** | Sets a device as the priority device. | **ON***1/**OFF** |
| | **Disconnect All Devices** (**Disconnect All Device**) | Disconnects a paired phone from HFT. | — |
| | **Delete Device** | Deletes a paired phone. | — |
| **Clock Settings** | **Automatic Time** | Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function. | **ON***1/**OFF** |
| | **Daylight Saving Time** | Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time. | **ON/OFF***1 |
| | **Set Time** | Adjusts time.<br>➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 166 | — |
| | **Time Zone** | Changes the time zone manually. | |
| **Smartphone Settings** | **Apple CarPlay** | Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection. | — |
| | **Android Auto** | Sets up the Android Auto connection. | |

*1:Default Setting

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Display Adjustment** | **Brightness** | Changes the brightness of the audio/ information screen. | — |
| | **Contrast** | Changes the contrast of the audio/ information screen. | |
| | **Black Level** | Changes the black level of the audio/ information screen. | |
| | **Day** / **Night** / **Display OFF** | Changes between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and display off mode. | |
| **Touch Panel Sensitivity** | | Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen. | **Normal**[*1]/**High** |
| **Rear Camera Settings** (**Rear Camera Setting**) | **Fixed Guideline** | Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 528 | **ON**[*1]/**OFF** |
| | **Dynamic Guideline** | Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 528 | **ON**[*1]/**OFF** |
| **Language** | | Changes the display language. | **English** (United Kingdom)[*2], **English** (United States)[*2], or Thai[*2] See other selectable languages on the screen. |
| **Licence** (**License**) | | Shows the legal information. | — |
| **Factory Data Reset** | | Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➔ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 283 | — |

*1:Default Setting
*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Press the **PHONE** button and select **Settings**.

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Bluetooth Settings** | **Connect New Device** | Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 289 | — |
| | **Change Device** | Connects a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 289 | — |
| | **Priority Device** | Sets a device as the priority device. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | **Disconnect All Devices** (**Disconnect All Device**) | Disconnects a paired phone from HFT. | — |
| | **Delete Device** | Deletes a paired phone. | — |
| **Ringtone** | | Selects the ring tone. | **Phone***1**/Vehicle** |
| **Auto Phone Call Transfer** | | Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| **System Clear** (**Hands-Free System Clear**) | | Resets all customized items in the Phone Settings group as default. | — |

*1:Default Setting

# Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
3. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
4. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   ▶ The system will reboot.

**Defaulting All the Settings**

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

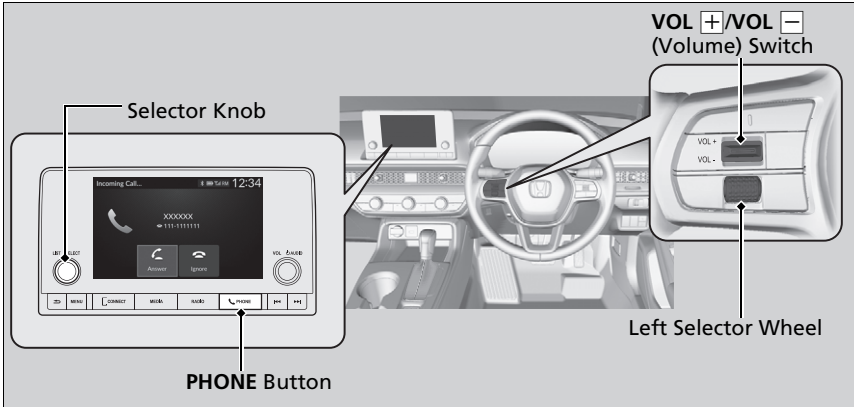
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

# Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### ■ HFT Buttons




Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

Up to 20 favorite contacts can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

**Favorite Contacts** P. 297

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

**Left Selector Wheel:** While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

➔ **Receiving a Call** P. 302

**PHONE button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

**Selector knob:** Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Hands-Free Telephone System

*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

*Continued*

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.




## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

# HFT Menus

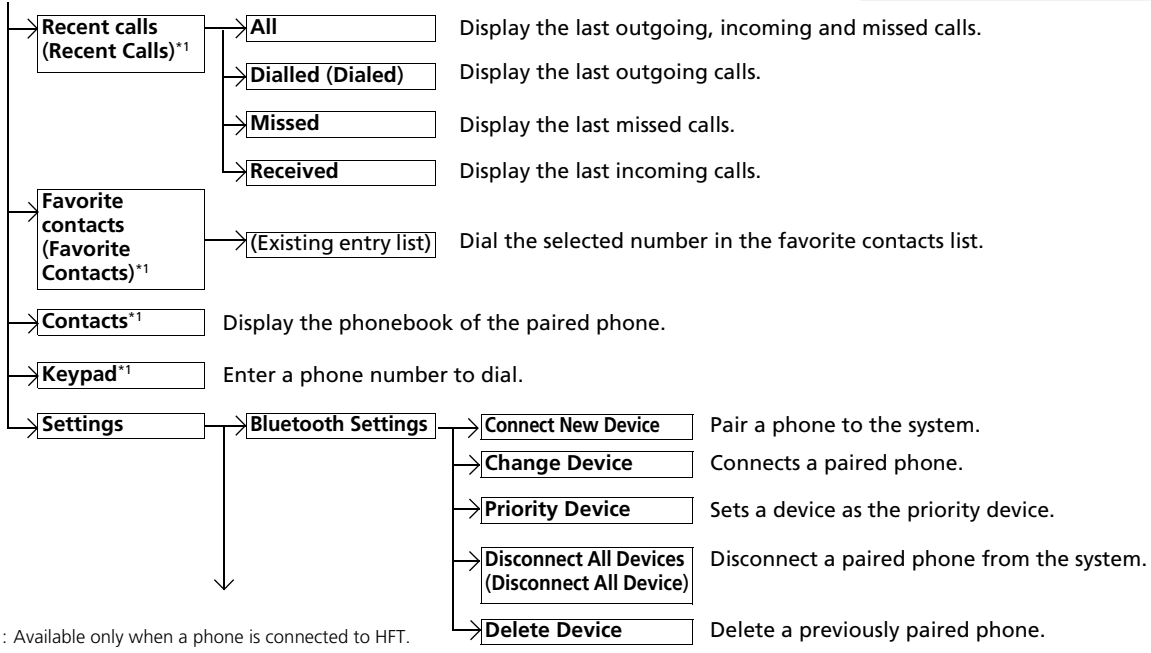
To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

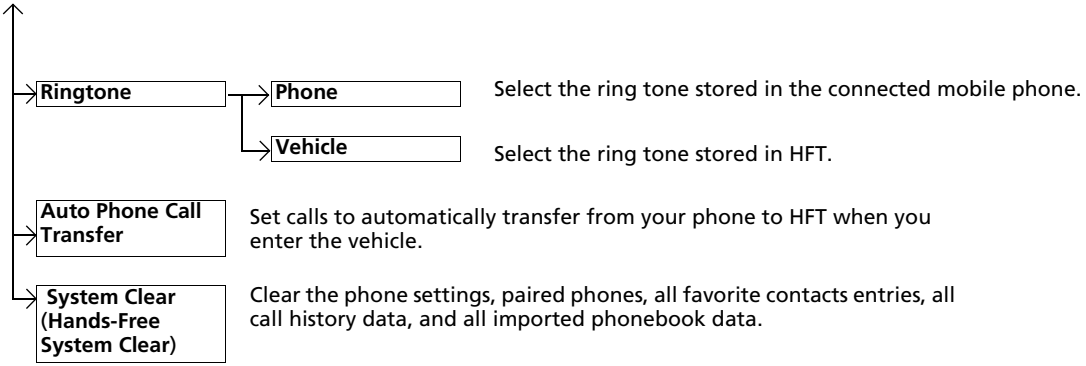
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is cancelled.

**PHONE button**

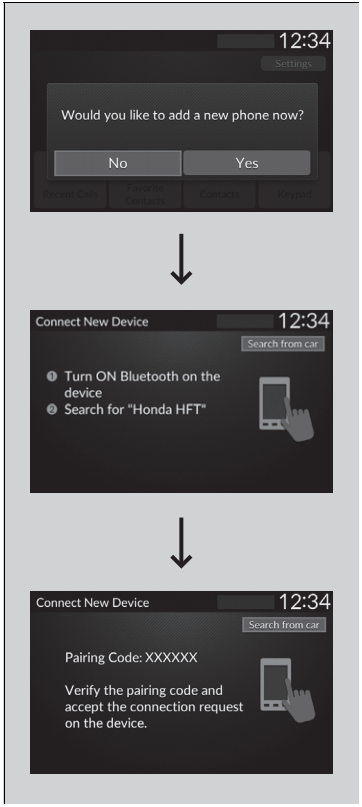



*1: Available only when a phone is connected to HFT.

*Continued*


Ringtone
Phone
Select the ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone.
Vehicle
Select the ring tone stored in HFT.
Auto Phone Call Transfer
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.
System Clear (Hands-Free System Clear)
Clear the phone settings, paired phones, all favorite contacts entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data.

## Phone Setup




### To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.

**2.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.

**3.** Select **Yes**.
▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.

**4.** Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search from car** and follow the prompts.
When your phone appears on the list, select it.

**5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by phone.

**6.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

*Continued*

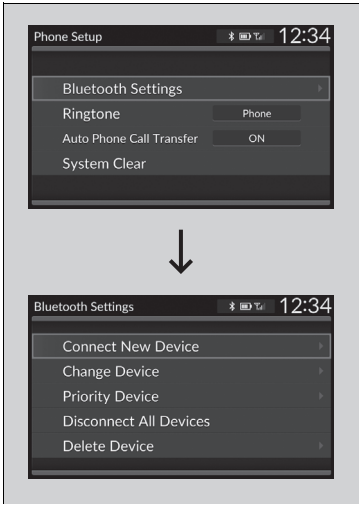
Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to the **Bluetooth Settings** screen.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
: The phone can be used with HFT.

When pairing a phone from this audio system:
If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Search from phone** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.



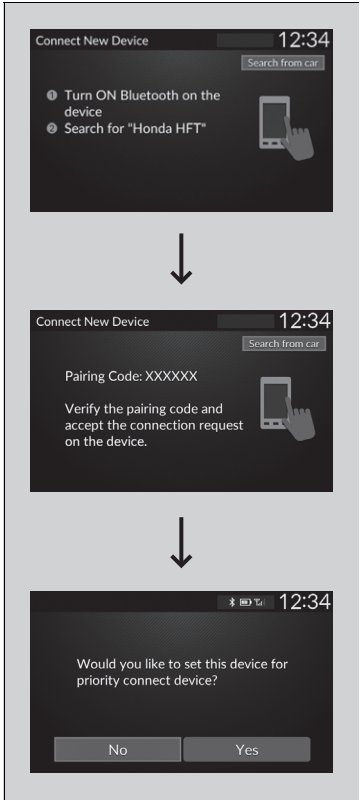

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.
▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.

**2.** Select **Settings**.

**3.** Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

**4.** Select **Connect New Device**.
▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.




**5.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.

**6.** Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.

▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search from car** and follow the prompts.
When your phone appears on the list, select it.

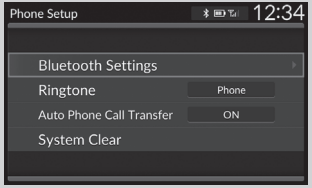
**7.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.

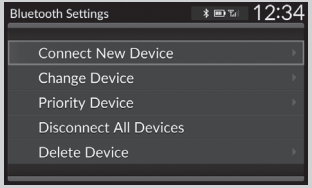
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by phone.

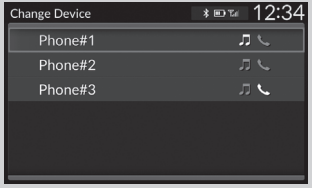
**8.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

▶ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** if you want to prioritize the device.

*Continued*




■ **To change the currently paired phone**

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.

**2.** Select **Settings**.

**3.** Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

**4.** Select **Change Device**.

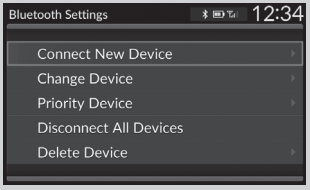
▶ The screen changes to a device list.

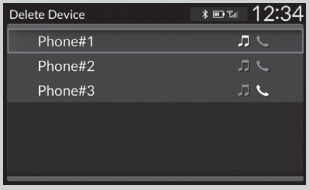
**5.** Select a desired device name.

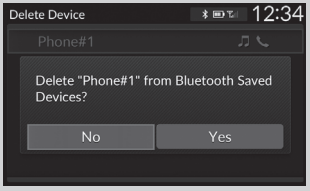
**6.** Select **Both**, **Audio**, or **Phone**.

▶ When another device is connected to Android Auto and you select **Both** or **Phone**, a confirmation message appears. Select **Continue**.

▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.




## ■ To delete a paired phone

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

**4.** Select **Delete Device**.
▶ The screen changes to a device list.
**5.** Select a phone you want to delete.

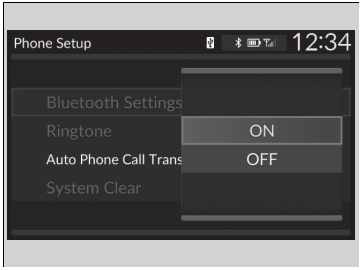
**6.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.
▶ When the device is connected to Android Auto, a confirmation message appears. Select **Yes**.



*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Transferring

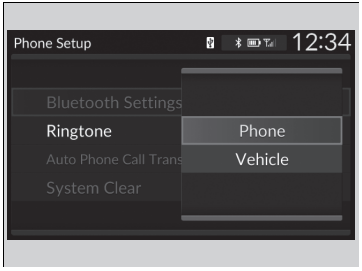
If paring between your phone and the system is executed while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.




1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



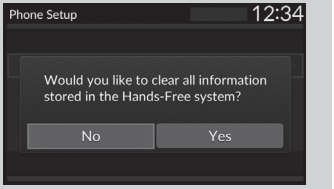

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Phone** or **Vehicle**.

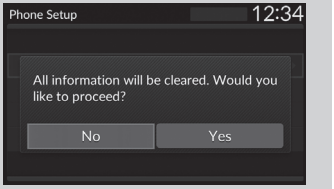
Ring Tone

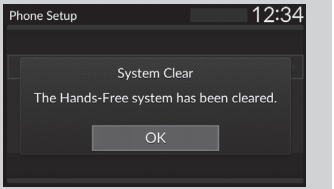
**Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.
**Vehicle:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

## To Clear the System

Phone settings, paired phones, all favorite contacts entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.




**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **System Clear** (**Hands-Free System Clear**).
**4.** Select **Yes**.

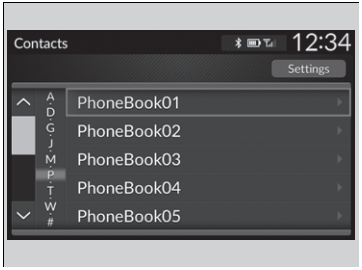
**5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

**6.** A notification appears on the screen. Select **OK**.

*Continued*

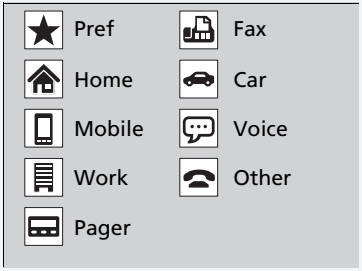
## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.




### Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to five category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

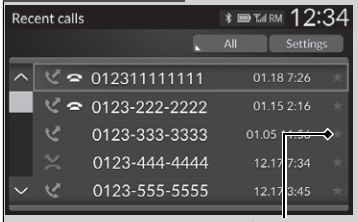



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

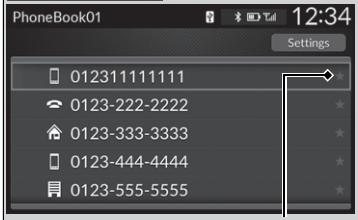
The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## ■ Favorite Contacts

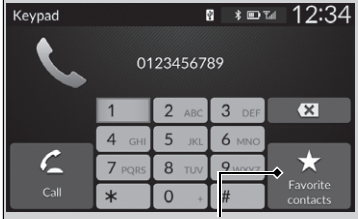
Recent calls Screen




Contacts Screen




Keypad Screen




### ■ To add a favorite contacts

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

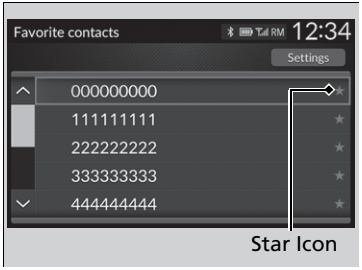
On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Favorite contacts** (**Add to Favorites**).
   - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the favorite contact is successfully stored.
   - ▶ To remove the favorite contact, select the star icon again.

*Continued*

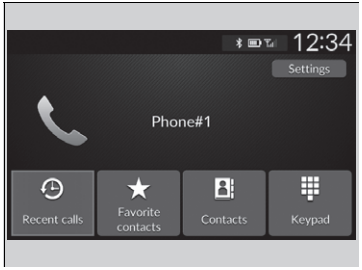


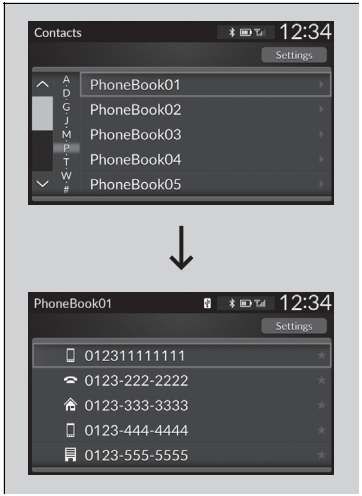

■ **To delete a favorite contact**

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.
**2.** Select **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
**3.** Select the star icon.
**4.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**), and **Contacts** entries.




### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

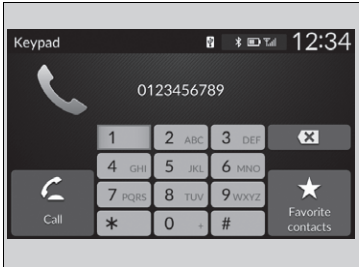
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Select a name.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

*Continued*

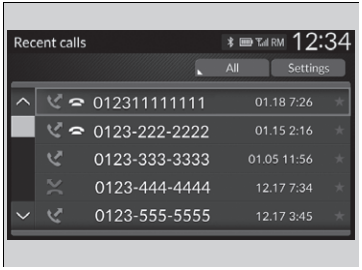
Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.




### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
4. Select **Call**.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



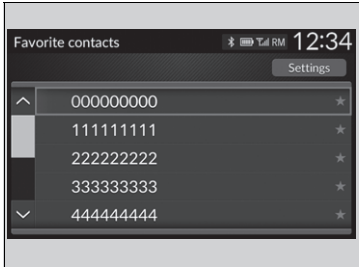

### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**).
   ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialled, received, or missed calls.




■ **To make a call using a favorite contact**

**1.** Press the **PHONE** button.

**2.** Select **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).

**3.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.



*Continued*

## ■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick the call, roll up or down to select **Answer** on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select **Ignore** on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

### Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Select **Answer** using the left selector wheel to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select **Swap calls** using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** using the left selector wheel to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select **Hang up** using the left selector wheel if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the icons on the driver information interface.

## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
**Swap Calls:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
**Mute:** Mute your voice.
**Use Handheld:** Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.
**Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.




The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

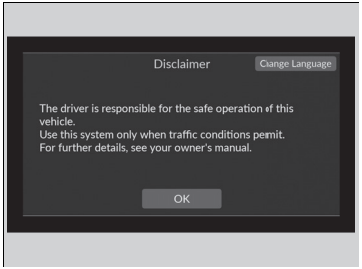
Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

**Keypad**: Available on some phones.

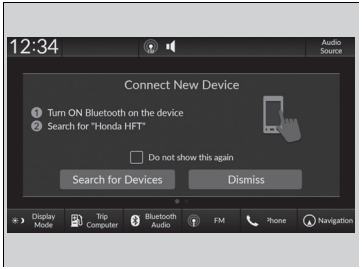
## Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.




Select **OK**.

- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.




### ■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.

# Basic Operation

## Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.




❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ (Home) Button
❻ (Back) Button
❼ **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❽ / (Seek/Track) Buttons
❾ Mode Change Switch Icons
❿ **Display Mode** Icon

Audio System Function

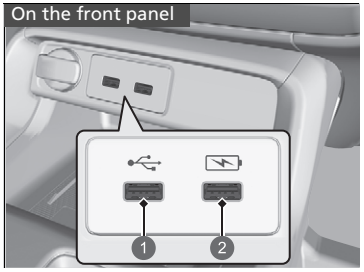
This screen is shown for the right-hand drive models. For the left-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

*Continued*

**All Apps**: Displays the all apps.
**Status Icons**: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
**App Shortcut Icons**: Display the app shortcut icons.
**Arrow**: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
**(Home) Button**: Presses to go to the home screen.
**(Back) Button**: Presses to go back to the previous screen.
**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
/ (Seek/Track) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
**Mode Change Switch Icons**: Display icons to change the mode directly.
**Display Mode Icon**: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment. Each time you select *1, the mode switches between the Day and Night mode.

*1: Models with A-type meter

## ■ USB Ports




❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

### ■ On the front panel ( )

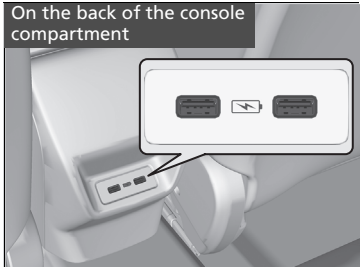
The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

### ■ On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.




### ■ On the back of the console compartment*

These USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

**USB Ports**

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

**USB charge**

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

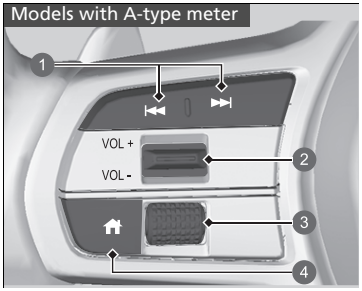
Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Audio Remote Controls

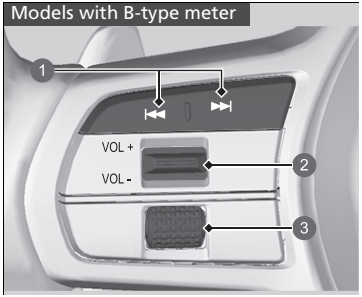
Models with A-type meter




Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ ⌂ (Home) Button

Models with B-type meter




❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the ⌂ (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

**VOL ＋/VOL － (Volume) Switch**
**Press Up:** To increase the volume.
**Press Down:** To decrease the volume.

**Left Selector Wheel**
• When selecting the audio mode*1
Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.



*1: Models with A-type meter

*Continued*

**Roll up or down:**
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
FM/AM/iPod/USB/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

**|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons**
- When listening to the radio
  **Press ▶▶|:** To select the next preset radio station.
  **Press |◀◀:** To select the previous preset radio station.
  **Press and hold ▶▶|:** To select the next strong station.
  **Press and hold |◀◀:** To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  **Press ▶▶|:** To skip to the next song.
  **Press |◀◀:** To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  **Press and hold ▶▶|:** To skip to the next folder.
  **Press and hold |◀◀:** To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  **Press and hold ▶▶|:** To skip to the next song.
  **Press and hold |◀◀:** To go back to the previous song.

# On-Board Owner's Manual*

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the Display Audio.

## ■ Open the Owner's Manual

**1.** Select **All Apps**.
**2.** Select **Owner's Manual**.

## ■ Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:
**1.** Tap the notification.
▶ The version screen will display.
**2.** Select items to be updated.
**3.** Tap **Update**.

If you unselect an item on the version screen, you will not receive any notifications for it.

### On-Board Owner's Manual*

This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

### Install/Update the Owner's Manual

There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.
**Wi-Fi Connection** P. 345



* Not available on all models

# Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.




Audio/Information Screen

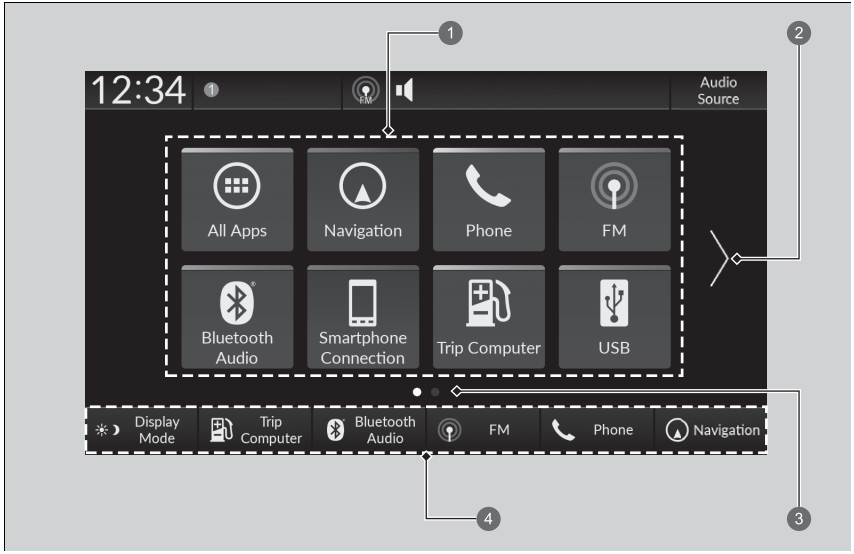
**Touchscreen Operation**

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

## App Shortcut Function




❶ App Shortcut Icons
❷ Arrow
❸ Page Indicator
❹ Mode Change Switches

### ■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

App Shortcut Function

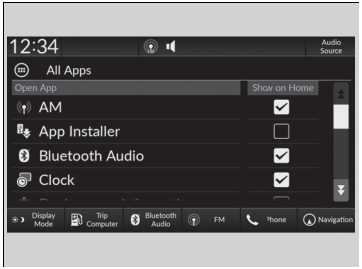
The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

*Continued*

## ■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.




**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **All Apps**.
**3.** Select the box checked on the desired apps.

### To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

**Defaulting All the Settings** P. 372

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

**Defaulting All the Settings** P. 372

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.




1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

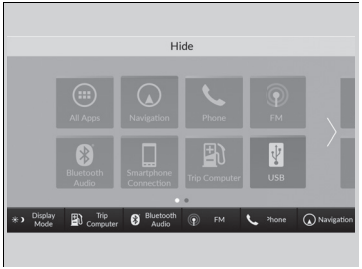
To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

*Continued*

## ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.




1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

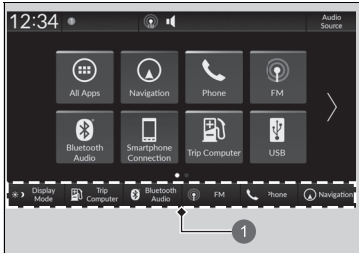
To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

## ■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to five icons on the bottom of the home screen.




1 Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

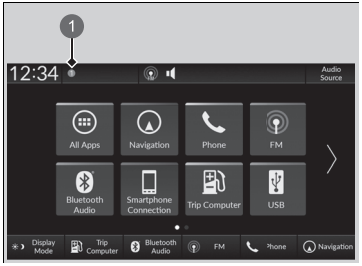
To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

## ■ Status Area

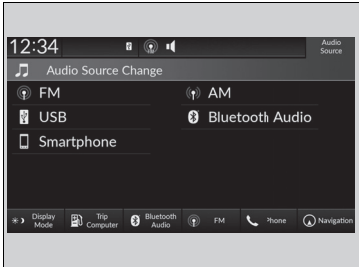
Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.




1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source




Select **Audio Source** on the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

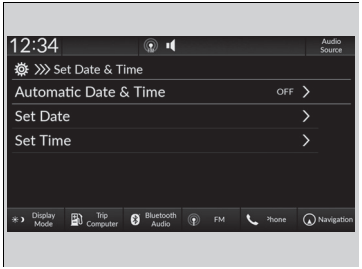
## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

# Clock Setup

## ■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.




**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select **Date & Time**.
**5.** Select **Set Date & Time**.
**6.** Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
**7.** Select **Set Date**.
**8.** Select ▲/▼.
**9.** Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
**7.** Select **Set Time**.
**8.** Select ▲/▼.
**9.** Select **Save** to set the time.

### Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

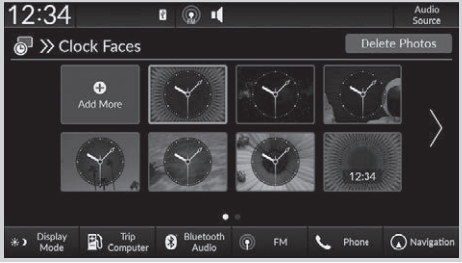
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
**System** P. 357

Features

## ■ Clock Wallpaper Setup




### ■ Import clock wallpaper

**1.** Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
**USB Ports** P. 307

**2.** Press the HOME button.

**3.** Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

**4.** Select **Settings**.

**5.** Select **Clock Faces**.

**6.** Select **Add More**.
▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.

**7.** Select a desired picture to import.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.

**8.** Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.

**9.** Select **Transfer**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

*Continued*

■ **Select clock wallpaper**

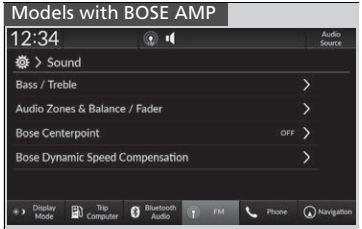
**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
**3.** Select **Settings**.
**4.** Select **Clock Faces**.
**5.** Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
**6.** Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ **Delete clock wallpaper**

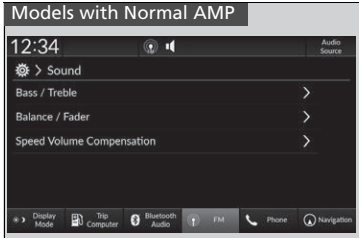
**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
**3.** Select **Settings**.
**4.** Select **Clock Faces**.
**5.** Select **Delete Photos**.
**6.** Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
**7.** Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
**8.** Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

# Adjusting the Sound

Models with BOSE AMP




Models with Normal AMP




**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select an audio source icon.
**3.** Select **Sound**.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1]**:** Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint**[*1]**:** Bose Centerpoint
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]**:** Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation
- **Balance / Fader**[*2]**:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2]**:** Speed Volume Compensation

*1: Models with BOSE AMP
*2: Models with Normal AMP

## Adjusting the Sound

The **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]**/Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

**Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1]
You can change where the sound comes from by selecting one of the speaker options below:

- **Full Vehicle:** All the speakers emit sound.
- **Driver Only:** Only the speaker by the driver's seat emits sound.
- **Front Only:** Only the front speakers emit sound.
- **Rear Only:** Only the rear speakers emit sound.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1], **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1], **Balance / Fader**[*2], and **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2], select **Default** on each setting screen.

# Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

## ■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Models with A-type meter




Models with B-type meter




Select **Display Mode**.

- ▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
- ▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.
- ▶ Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the HOME or BACK button.
- ▶ Select *1 to switch between the Day and Night mode.

*1: Models with A-type meter

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

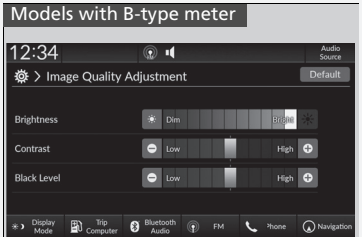
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

Models with A-type meter




Models with B-type meter



# System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, a USB device, or the telematics control unit (TCU)* through the subscription-based service.

## ■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

**1.** Press the HOME button.

**2.** Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

**Status Area** P. 318

**3.** Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

**4.** Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You stop the engine when the battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

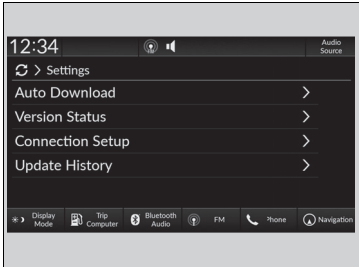
For the battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ System Updates Settings




The following settings can be set.

- **Auto Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Update History**

### ■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

**1.** Press the HOME button.

**2.** Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

**3.** Select **Settings**.

**4.** Select **Auto Download**.

**5.** Select the access point, then select **Allow**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Block**.

### ■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

**1.** Press the HOME button.

**2.** Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

**3.** Select **Settings**.

**4.** Select **Version Status**.

■ **Connection setup**

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

**1.** Press the HOME button.

**2.** Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

**3.** Select **Settings**.

**4.** Select **Connection Setup**.

**5.** Select **OK**.

**6.** Select an access point from the network list.

▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.

**7.** Enter the password.

▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.

**8.** Select **Connect**.

■ **View the update history**

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

**1.** Press the HOME button.

**2.** Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

**3.** Select **Settings**.

**4.** Select **Update History**.



*Continued*

## ■ How to Update Wirelessly

### ■ Wireless connection mode setup

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
**3.** Select **Settings**.
**4.** Select **Connection Setup**.
**5.** Select **OK**.
**6.** Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
**7.** Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
**8.** Select **Connect**.

### ■ How to update

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
**3.** Select **via Wireless**.
**4.** Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
**5.** Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

## How to Update with a USB Device

### Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   **USB Ports** P. 307
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

### Update the audio system

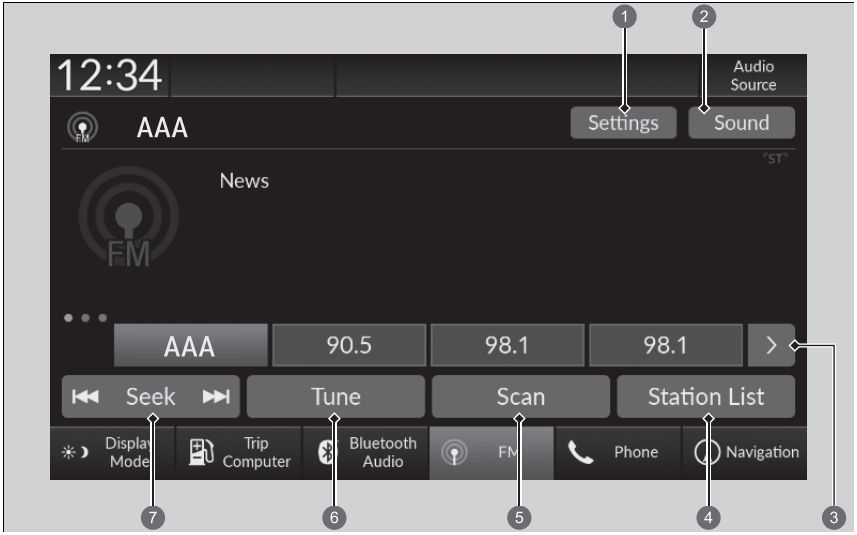
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   **USB Ports** P. 307
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

# Playing FM/AM Radio




❶ **Settings Icon***
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Station List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Tune Icon**
❼ **Seek Icon**





* Not available on all models

## ■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
**1.** Tune to the selected station.
**2.** Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
**1.** Select **Station List** to display a list.
**2.** Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Select **Station List** to display a list.
**2.** Select **Refresh**.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

## ■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 308

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

*Continued*

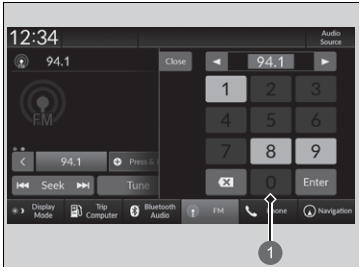
## ■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

**Adjusting the Sound** P. 323

## ■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.




1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.5 to 108.0MHz.

**◀/▶ icons:**
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

**1.** Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Select **Refresh**.

### ■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

**To turn the function on:** Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

**To turn the function off:** Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Settings*

Changes the RDS settings.

**1. Settings**.

**2.** Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF**[*1])
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**[*1]/**OFF**)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON**[*1]/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF**[*1])

*1 : Default Setting

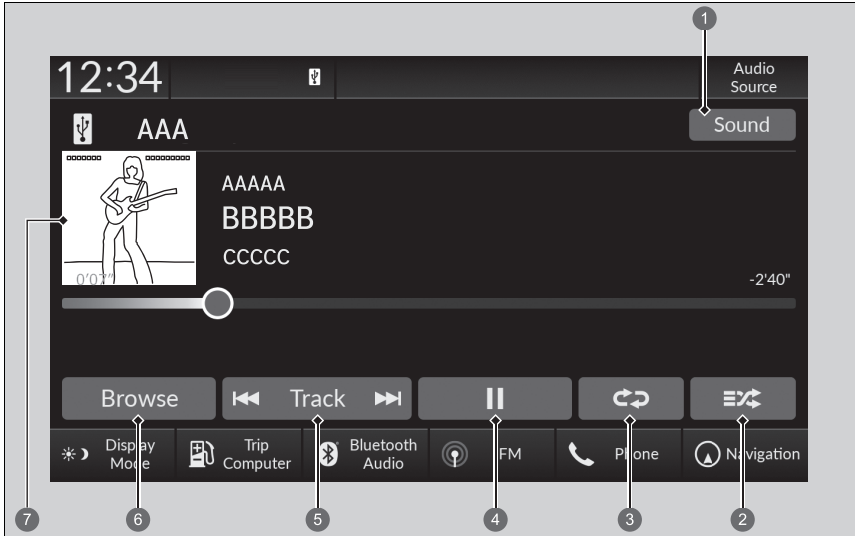


 * Not available on all models

# Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

**USB Ports** P. 307




❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

**Playing an iPod**

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 394

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

*Continued*

## ■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

**1.** Select **Browse**.

**2.** Select a search category.

**3.** Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

### ■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

**Shuffle**

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

**Repeat**

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

### ■ To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

## How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

## Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

**Adjusting the Sound** P. 323

# Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

**USB Ports** P. 307




❶ **Settings Icon** (Playing a video)
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Random Icon**
❹ **Repeat Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Stop Icon** (Playing a video)
❼ **Track/Video Icons**
❽ **Browse Icon**
❾ **Cover Art** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player** (Playing a video)

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/ WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

**1.** Select **Browse**.

**2.** Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

**3.** Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

**General Information on the Audio System** P. 396

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 394

*Continued*

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

**■ Random/Repeat**

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

**Random**

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Repeat**

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**■ When playing a video file**

■ (stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

**■ To pause or resume a file**

Select the play/pause icon.

## ■ How to Change a File

**Track/Video** Icons

You can select to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

## ■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➲ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 323

## ■ Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

**1. Settings**.

**2.** Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness**/**Contrast**/**Black Level**/**Colour** (**Color**)/**Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original**/**Normal**[*1]/**Full**/**Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right** (**Upper Right**)[*1]/**Upper left** (**Upper Left**)/**Lower right** (**Lower Right**)/**Lower left** (**Lower Left**)/**OFF**)



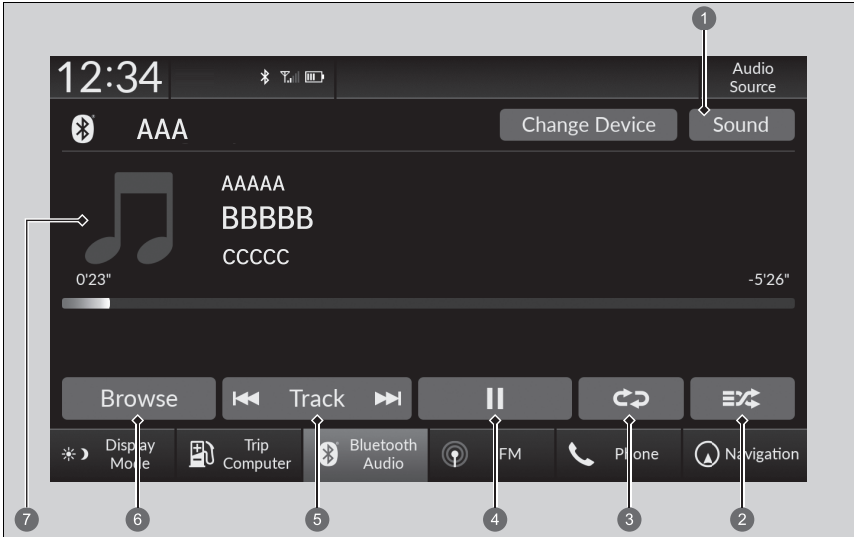
*1: Default Setting

# Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 380




❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

**1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380

**2.** Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

**Shuffle**

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

**Repeat**

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat group): Repeats the current group.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380



*Continued*

## ■ Searching for Music

**1.** Select **Browse**.
**2.** Select a search category.
**3.** Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

## ■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 323

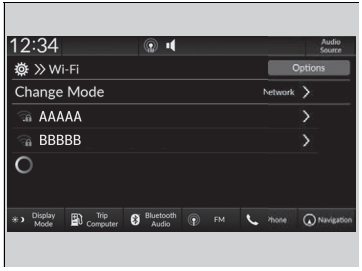
Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

# Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

## ■ Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot




**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **Connections**.
**4.** Select **Wi-Fi**.
**5.** Select **OK**.
**6.** Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
**7.** Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
➡ **System Updates** P. 325
**8.** Select **Connect**.

### ■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

**1.** Select **Change Mode**.
**2.** Select **OFF**.

**Wi-Fi Connection**

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

**Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot**

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
➡ **Status Area** P. 318

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

# Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

**USB Ports** P. 307




**1 Apple CarPlay**

**Apple CarPlay**

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

**Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 348

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

## Apple CarPlay Menu




- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
- 
  Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen.
- 
  Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

Apple CarPlay

**Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Continued

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

## ■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

**1.** Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
**USB Ports** P. 307
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
**2.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

## ■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

### ■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **Smartphone Connection**.
**3.** Select **+ Connect New Device**.
**4.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
**Phone Setup** P. 380
**5.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

### Setting Up Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

**Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list**

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **Smartphone Connection**.
**4.** Select **Apple CarPlay**.
**5.** Select **+ Connect New Device**.
**6.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
**Phone Setup** P. 380
**7.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **Connections**.
**4.** Select **Bluetooth**.
**5.** Select **+ Connect New Device**.
**6.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
**Phone Setup** P. 380
**7.** Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
**8.** Select **Connect**.
**9.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.



*Continued*

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel**

**1.** Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.
**2.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380
**3.** Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
**4.** Select **Connect**.
**5.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

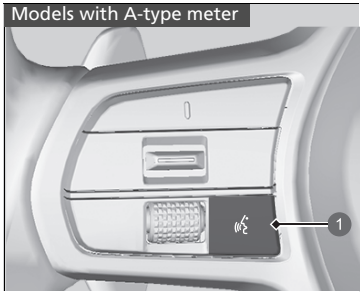
■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

**1.** Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.
**2.** Select **OK**.
▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.
**3.** Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380
**4.** Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
**5.** Select **Connect**.
**6.** Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

## Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

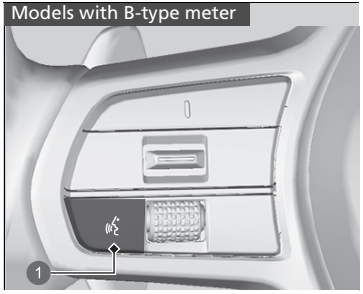
Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.

Models with A-type meter




1 (Talk) Button

Models with B-type meter




1 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

# Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

**USB Ports** P. 307

**Auto Pairing Connection** P. 354

**NOTE:**
Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.




**1 Android Auto**

## Android Auto

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
*Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

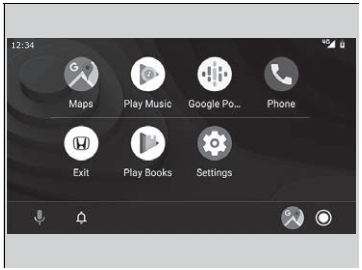
**USB Ports** P. 307

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

## Android Auto Menu




- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Exit**
- 
  Operate Android Auto with your voice.
- 
  You can check Android notifications.
- (Android Auto Home)
  Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

**Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

*Continued*

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

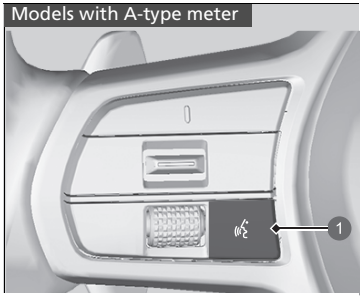
You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

**Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

## Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

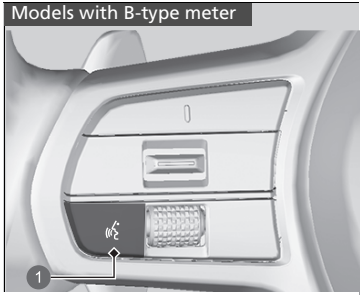
Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.

Models with A-type meter




1 (Talk) Button

Models with B-type meter




1 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type
*2: Left-hand Drive Type

### Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

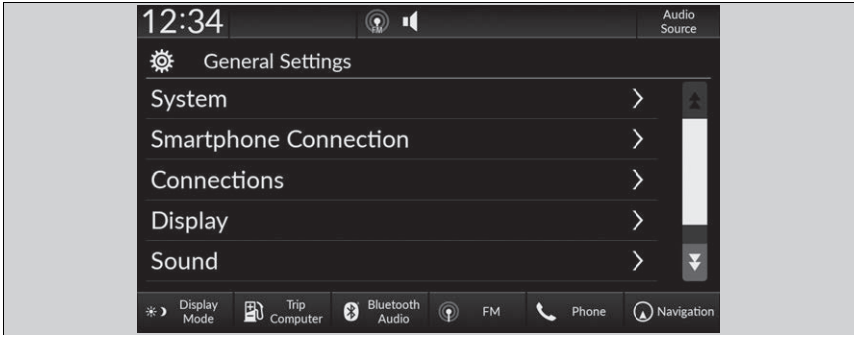
You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the icon in the lower-left*1/right*2 corner of the screen.

# Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

## ■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.




- **System** ➔ P. 357
- **Smartphone Connection** ➔ P. 359
- **Connections** ➔ P. 360
- **Display** ➔ P. 361
- **Sound** ➔ P. 362
- **Camera** ➔ P. 363

### Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

■ **System**

| Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Date & Time** | **Set Date & Time** | **Automatic Date & Time** | Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | | **Set Date** | Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 320 | **Day/Month/Year** |
| | | **Set Time** | Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 320 | **Hour/Minute AM/PM** |
| | **Time Zone*** | **Automatic Time Zone*** | Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | | (Select time zone) | Changes the time zone manually. | — |
| | **Auto Daylight Saving Time*** | | Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| | **Date Format** | | Select a date format. | **MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY***1**/ YYYY/MM/DD** |
| | **Time Format** | | Select a time format. | **12-H***1**/24-H** (**12H***1**/24H**) |

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Language** | | Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately. | **English** (United Kingdom)*2, **English** (United States)*2, or Thai*2 See other selectable languages on the screen. |
| **Touch Panel Sensitivity** | | Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen. | **High/Normal***1 |
| **System Volumes** | **System Sounds** | Sets the system sound volume level. | — |
| | **Text-to-Speech** | Sets the text-to-speech volume level. | — |
| | **Navigation Guidance** | Sets the navigation guidance volume level. | — |
| | **Phone Calls** | Sets the phone call volume level. | — |
| | **Default** | Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values. | |
| **Refuel Recommend*** | | Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. ➡ **Refuel Recommend*** P. 393 | **ON***1**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.



 * Not available on all models

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **About** | **Status** | Displays the Android setting items. | — |
| | **Legal Information** | | |
| | **Model Number** | | |
| | **Android Version** | | |
| | **Kernel Version** | | |
| | **Build Number** | | |
| **Factory Data Reset** | | Resets all the settings to their factory default.<br>➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 372 | **Continue/Cancel** |
| **Detail Information** | **App Manager** | Displays the Android system memory and apps information. | — |

■ **Smartphone Connection**

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Apple CarPlay** | **+ Connect New Device** | Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380 | — |
| | (Saved Devices) | Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380 | — |
| **Android Auto** | (Saved Devices) | Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 380 | — |



*Continued*

■ **Connections**

| Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Wi-Fi** | **Change Mode** | | Changes the Wi-Fi mode. | **Network**[*1]/ **Smartphone**[*2]/**OFF** |
| | (Available Networks/Connected Devices) | | Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s). | — |
| | **Options** | **Add Network** | Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi. | — |
| | | **Saved Networks** | Saves the connected network. | — |
| **Bluetooth** | **Options** | **Bluetooth** | Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off. | **ON**[*1]/**OFF** |
| | | **Priority Device** | Displays the priority device. | — |
| | **+ Connect New Device** | | Pairs a new phone to HFT. **Phone Setup** P. 380 | — |
| | (Saved Devices) | | Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 380 | — |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected wirelessly.

■ **Display**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Day Mode**[*1] | Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode. **Display Setup** P. 324 | — |
| **Night Mode**[*1] | | |
| **Brightness** | Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. | — |
| **Contrast** | Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen. | — |
| **Black Level** | Changes the black level of the audio/information screen. | — |
| **Default** | Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level. | — |

*1:Models with A-type meter

■ **Sound**

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Bass / Treble** | **Treble** | Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.<br>➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 323 | — |
| | **Midrange** | | |
| | **Bass** | | |
| **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1] | | | |
| **Bose Centerpoint**[*1] | | | |
| **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1] | | | |
| **Balance / Fader**[*2] | | | |
| **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] | | | |

*1:Models with BOSE AMP
*2:Models with Normal AMP

■ **Camera**

| Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Rear Camera** | **Fixed Guideline** | Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel.<br>➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 528 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Dynamic Guideline** | Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel.<br>➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 528 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| **LaneWatch*** | **Show with indicator** (**Show with turn signal**) | Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left[*2]/right[*3] turn.<br>➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 439 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Display Time after Indicator Off** (**Display Time after Turn Signal Off**) | Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.<br>➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 439 | **0 seconds**[*1]**/2 seconds** |
| | **Show Reference Line** | Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.<br>➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 439 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Right-hand Drive Type
*3:Left-hand Drive Type



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.




- **Deflation Warning System** (**TPMS Calibration**)* ➡ P. 365
- **Driver Assist System Setup** ➡ P. 365
- **Meter setup** (**Meter Setup**) ➡ P. 366
- **Keyless Access Setup*** ➡ P. 368
- **Lighting Setup** ➡ P. 369
- **Door/Window Setup** ➡ P. 370
- **Maintenance Info.** ➡ P. 371

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

➡ **App Shortcut Function** P. 313





* Not available on all models

■ **Deflation Warning System (TPMS Calibration)***

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Deflation Warning System** (**TPMS Calibration**) | Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System. ➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 437 | **Calibrate/Cancel** |

■ **Driver Assist System Setup**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance** (**Forward Collision Warning Distance**) | Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 447 | **Far/Normal**[*1]**/Near** (**Long/Normal**[*1]**/Short**) |
| **ACC vehicle ahead detected beep** (**ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep**) | Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 460 | **ON/OFF**[*1] |
| **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** | Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ➡ **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** P. 504 | **OFF/Normal**[*1]**/Early** |
| **Road departure mitigation setting** (**Road Departure Mitigation Setting**) | Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 496 | **Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning only** (**Narrow/Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only**) |

*1:Default Setting



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Lane keep assist beep** (**Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep**) | Selects On/Off the LKAS alert for not detecting road lines.<br>➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 482 | **ON/OFF**[*1] |
| **Driver attention monitor** (**Driver Attention Monitor**) | Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.<br>➡ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 124, 156 | **OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert**[*1] (**OFF/Tactile Alert/Tactile And Audible Alert**[*1]) |

*1:Default Setting



■ **Meter setup (Meter Setup)**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Adjust outside temp. display** (**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**) | Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees.<br>➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 114 | **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** |
| **Trip A reset timing** (**"Trip A" Reset Timing**) | Selects the timing to reset Trip A.<br>➡ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 117, 149<br>➡ **Speed & Time** P. 120, 152 | **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] (**When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1]) |

*1:Default Setting

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Trip B reset timing** (**"Trip B" Reset Timing**) | Selects the timing to reset Trip B.<br>➡ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 117, 149<br>➡ **Speed & Time** P. 120, 152 | **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]<br>(**When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1]) |
| **Alarm volume control** (**Adjust Alarm Volume**) | Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator. | **Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**<br>(**High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**) |
| **Fuel efficiency backlight** (**Fuel Efficiency Backlight**)* | Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| **Turn by turn display** (**Turn By Turn Auto Display**) | Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface.<br>➡ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 122, 154 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| **Fuel economy unit** (**Fuel Economy Unit**)* | Selects the fuel consumption units. | Except Vietnamese models<br>**km/l**[*1]**/l/100km**<br>Vietnamese models<br>**km/l/l/100km**[*1] |
| **Tachometer*** | Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| **Rear seat reminder** (**Rear Seat Reminder**) | Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

■ **Keyless Access Setup***

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Door unlock mode** (**Door Unlock Mode**)* | Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. | **Driver door only***1/**All doors** (**Driver Door Only***1/**All Doors**) |
| **Smart Entry Beep Volume** | Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors. | **Max***1/**Min** (**High***1/**Low**) |
| **Smart Entry Light Flash** | Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors. | **ON***1/**OFF** |
| **Smart Entry Beep** | Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors. | **ON***1/**OFF** |
| **Remote start system ON/OFF** (**Remote Start System ON/OFF**)* | Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. | **ON***1/**OFF** |

*1:Default Setting



 * Not available on all models

■ **Lighting Setup**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto High Beam** | Turns on/off auto high beam function. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| **Interior light dimmer duration** (**Interior Light Dimming Time**) | Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed.<br>➡ **Interior Lights** P. 225 | **60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec** |
| **Headlight auto OFF timer** (**Headlight Auto OFF Timer**) | Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.<br>➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 199 | **60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec** |
| **Headlight integration with wipers** (**Auto Headlight On with Wiper On**) | Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting.<br>➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 199 | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

■ **Door/Window Setup**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto door lock** (**Auto Door Lock**) | Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature. | **OFF/With vehicle speed**[*1]**/Shift from P** (**OFF/With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift From P**) |
| **Auto door unlock** (**Auto Door Unlock**) | Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically. | African and Latin American models<br>**OFF/All doors with IGN OFF/Driver door with IGN OFF/All Doors With Shift To P/Driver Door With Shift To P**[*1] (**OFF/All Doors With IGN OFF/Driver Door With IGN OFF/All Doors With Shift To P/Driver Door With Shift To P**[*1])<br>Except African and Latin American models<br>**OFF/Shift to P**[*1]**/When ignition is turned OFF** (**OFF/Shift To P**[*1]**/IGN OFF**) |
| **Key and remote unlock mode** (**Key And Remote Unlock Mode**)[*] | Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the keyless remote or built-in key. | **Driver door only**[*1]**/All doors** (**Driver Door Only**[*1]**/All Doors**) |

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Walk away lock** (**Walk Away Auto Lock**)* | Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle. | **ON/OFF***1 |
| **Keyless lock notification** (**Keyless Lock Answer Back**) | Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. ➡ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 176 | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| **Auto Folding Door Mirror** | Changes how you can fold the door mirrors. | **ON***1**/OFF** |
| **Remote Window Control*** | Turns the remote window control on and off. | **ON***1**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

■ **Maintenance Info.**

| Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|
| **Maintenance Info.** | Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 539 | **Reset** |



* Not available on all models

# Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

## ■ Defaulting General Settings

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
**5.** Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
**6.** Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

## ■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **Vehicle Settings**.
**3.** Select **Default**.
**4.** Select **Yes**.

### Defaulting All the Settings

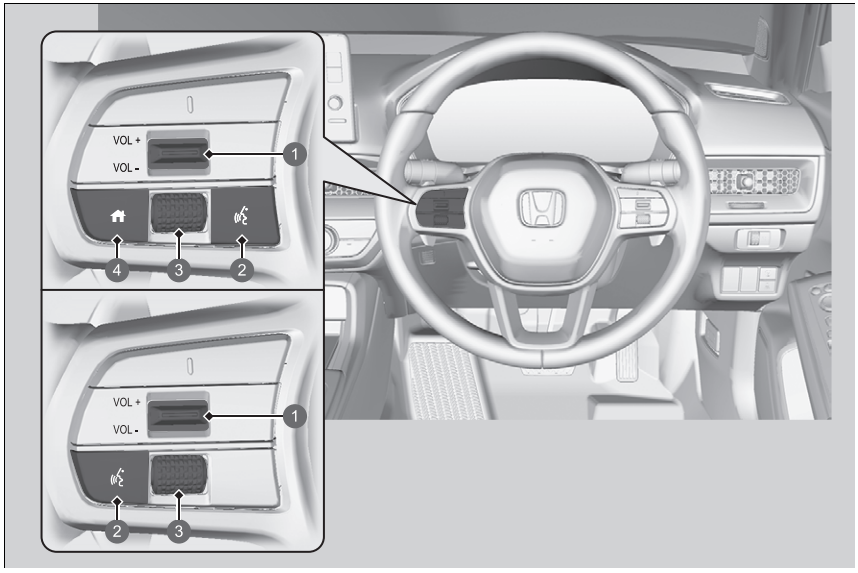
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

# Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## HFT Buttons




❶ **VOL** ＋/**VOL** － (Volume) Switch
❷ (Talk) Button
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ (Home) Button*1

*1: Models with A-type meter

*Continued*

### Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

**Favourite Contacts** P. 385

**(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.
**(Home) button*1:** Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.
**Left Selector Wheel:** Press the (Home) button*1. Roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel. While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

**Receiving a Call** P. 391

Hands-Free Telephone System

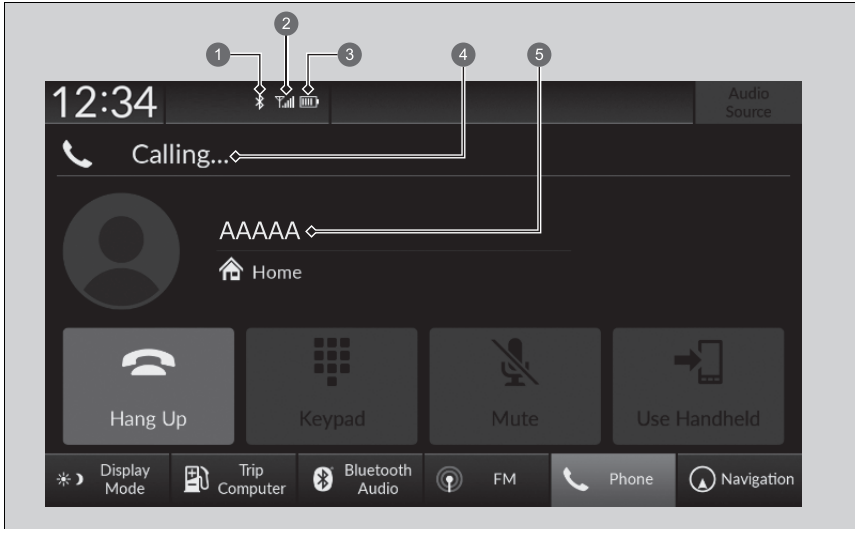
*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

*1: Models with A-type meter

## HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.




❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

### HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

*Continued*

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored Favourite contacts entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➲ **Favourite Contacts** P. 385

## HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.




❶ **Settings**
❷ **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**)
❸ **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**)
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Keypad**

HFT Menus

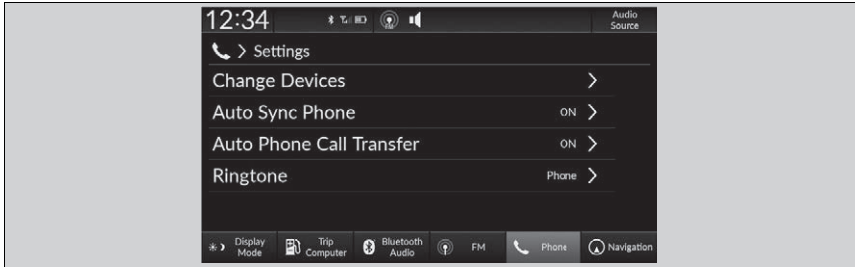
Some functions are limited while driving.

*Continued*

**Settings:** Changes the phone settings.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 379
**Recent calls (Recent Calls):** Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 389
**Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts):** Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.
➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 389
**Contacts:** Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 390
**Keypad:** Enters a phone number to dial.
➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 390

## Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.




**Change Devices:** Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

**Phone Setup** P. 380

**Auto Sync Phone:** Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

**Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls** P. 383

**Auto Phone Call Transfer:** Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

**Automatic Transferring** P. 384

**Ringtone:** Selects the ring tone.

**Ring Tone** P. 384



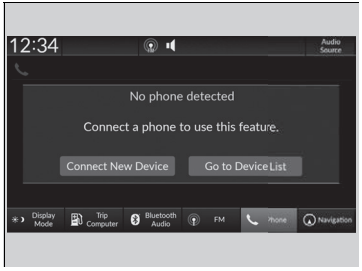
*Continued*

## ■ Phone Setup

### ■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **Connections**.
**4.** Select **Bluetooth**.
**5.** Select **Options**.
**6.** Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.




■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

*Continued*




## ■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.




## ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

### To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

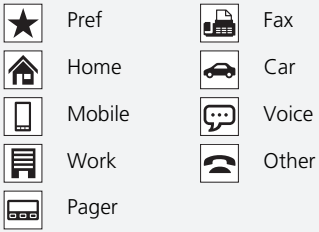
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

**1.** Select **Phone**.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
**4.** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

### Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.




On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

**1.** Select **Phone**.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
**4.** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

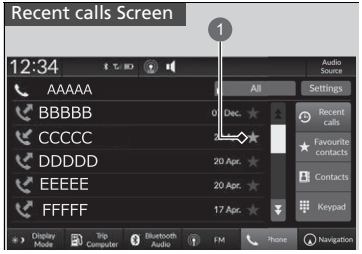
**1.** Select **Phone**.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Ringtone**.
**4.** Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

Ring Tone

**Vehicle**: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
**Phone**: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

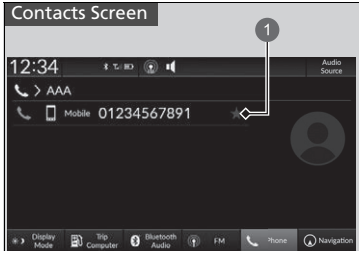
## ■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen




1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen




1 Star Icon

### ■ To add a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

On the Keypad screen

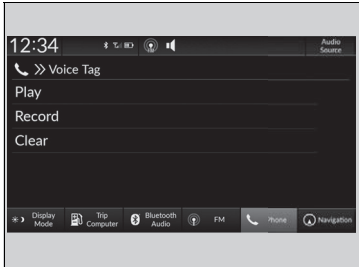
3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts** (**Add to Favorite Contacts**).
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
   ▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.

*Continued*

Keypad Screen




❶ **Add to Favourite Contacts (Add to Favorite Contacts)**




■ **To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts entry**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

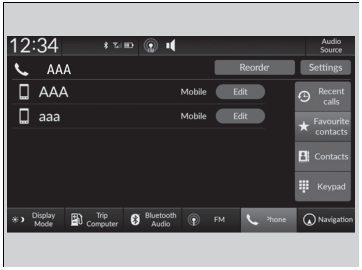
■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Favourite Contacts

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

*Continued*




■ **To edit a Favourite contacts**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ **To delete a Favourite contacts**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## ■ Making a Call




You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**), and **Contacts** entries.

### ■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, and **Received**.

**1.** Select **Phone**.

**2.** Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**).
▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

**3.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

**1.** Select **Phone**.

**2.** Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.

**3.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

**Making a Call**

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

**To make a call using the recent calls**

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

**All:** Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
**Dialled (Dialed):** Displays the last outgoing calls.
**Missed:** Displays the last missed calls.
**Received:** Displays the last incoming calls.

**To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry**

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 385

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

*Continued*

■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

**1.** Select **Phone**.
**2.** Select **Contacts**.
**3.** Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname** (**Last Name**). Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
**4.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

**1.** Select **Phone**.
**2.** Select **Keypad**.
**3.** Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
**4.** Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

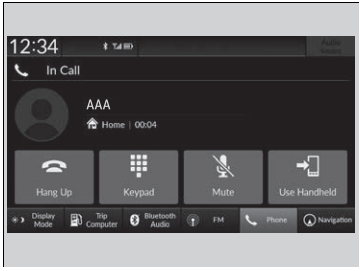
Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

*Continued*

## ■ Options During a Call




The following options are available during a call.
**Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
**Mute:** Mute your voice.
**Use Handheld:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

# Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for gas stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.




1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.
3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now** (**Find Gas Station Now**).
4. Choose a gas station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

❶ Notification Icon

* Not available on all models

## Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the Refuel Recommend function on and off.

**Customized Features** P. 356

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the gas tank fuel level is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** (**Find Gas Station Now**) or put more than 5 liters of gasoline into the gas tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select OFF in the settings for Refuel Recommend.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Faulty USB Device**<br>**Please check owner's manual**<br>(**Bad USB Device**<br>**Please check owners manual**)*1 | Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error. |
| **Connect Retry***1, *2 | Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod. |
| **Unplayable File***1, *2 | Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file. |
| **No Data***1, *2 | iPod<br>Appears when the iPod is empty.<br>USB flash drive<br>Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive.<br>iPod and USB flash drive<br>Check that compatible files are stored on the device. |
| **Unsupported***1, *2 | Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. |

*1:Models with colour audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **No response from device (Device No Response)**[*1, *2] | Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase. |
| **USB hub not supported**[*1, *2] | Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB. |
| **A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.**[*1, *2] | Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error. |

*1:Models with colour audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

# Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

## iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with colour audio system

| Model |
|---|
| Made for iPod touch (6th to 7th generation) released between 2015 and 2019 |
| Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/ iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/ iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max /iPhone SE (2nd generation) |

Models with Display Audio

| Model |
|---|
| Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015 |
| Made for iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/ iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/ iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max |

*1: Models with Display Audio
*2: Models with colour audio system

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5*1, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c*1, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation)*2, iPod touch (5th*1, 6th, 7th*2 generation).

The 30-pin connector works with iPhone 4s*1.

USB works with iPhone 4s*1, iPhone 5*1, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c*1, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation)*2, iPod touch (5th*1, 6th, 7th*2 generation).

## ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.

Models with colour audio

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV

Models with Display Audio

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

*Continued*

## ■ Recommended Devices

### ■ MP4 File

| Media | USB Flash Drive | |
|---|---|---|
| **Profile (MP4 version)** | BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC) | SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4) |
| **File extension (MP4 version)** | .mp4/.m4v | |
| **Compatible audio codec** | AAC, MP3 | |
| **Compatible video codec** | MPEG4-AVC (H.264) | MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2) |
| **Bit rate** | 10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC) | 8 Mbps (MPEG4) |
| **Maximum image** | 1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC) | 720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4) |

### ■ AVI File

| Media | USB Flash Drive | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Profile (AVI version)** | BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC) | SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4) | AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1) |
| **File extension (AVI version)** | .avi | | |
| **Compatible audio codec** | AAC, MP3, WMA | | |
| **Compatible video codec** | MPEG4-AVC (H.264) | MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2) | VC-1 |
| **Bit rate** | 10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC) | 8 Mbps (MPEG4) | 20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1) |
| **Maximum image** | 1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC) | 720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4) | 1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1) |

■ **MKV File**

| **Media** | USB Flash Drive | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Profile (MKV version)** | BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC) | SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4) | AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1) |
| **File extension (MKV version)** | .mkv | | |
| **Compatible audio codec** | AAC, MP3 | | |
| **Compatible video codec** | MPEG4-AVC (H.264) | MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2) | VC-1 |
| **Bit rate** | 10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC) | 8 Mbps (MPEG4) | 20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1) |
| **Maximum image** | 1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC) | 720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4) | 1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1) |

■ **ASF/WMV File**

| **Media** | USB Flash Drive | |
|---|---|---|
| **Profile (ASF/WMV version)** | BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC) | AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1) |
| **File extension (ASF/WMV version)** | .asf/.wmv | |
| **Compatible audio codec** | WMA | |
| **Compatible video codec** | MPEG4-AVC (H.264) | VC-1 |
| **Bit rate** | 10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC) | 20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1) |
| **Maximum image** | 1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC) | 1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1) |

# About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

Models with colour audio

**1.** Press the **MENU** button.
**2.** Select **Licence** (**License**).

Models with Display Audio

**1.** Press the HOME button.
**2.** Select **General Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select **About**.
**5.** Select **Legal Information**.
**6.** Select **Licence** (**License**).

# Licence Information

## ■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by PANASONIC CORPORATION is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

*https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/*




## ■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.



*Continued*

## ■ Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



## ■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

*Continued*

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

# Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

## ■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

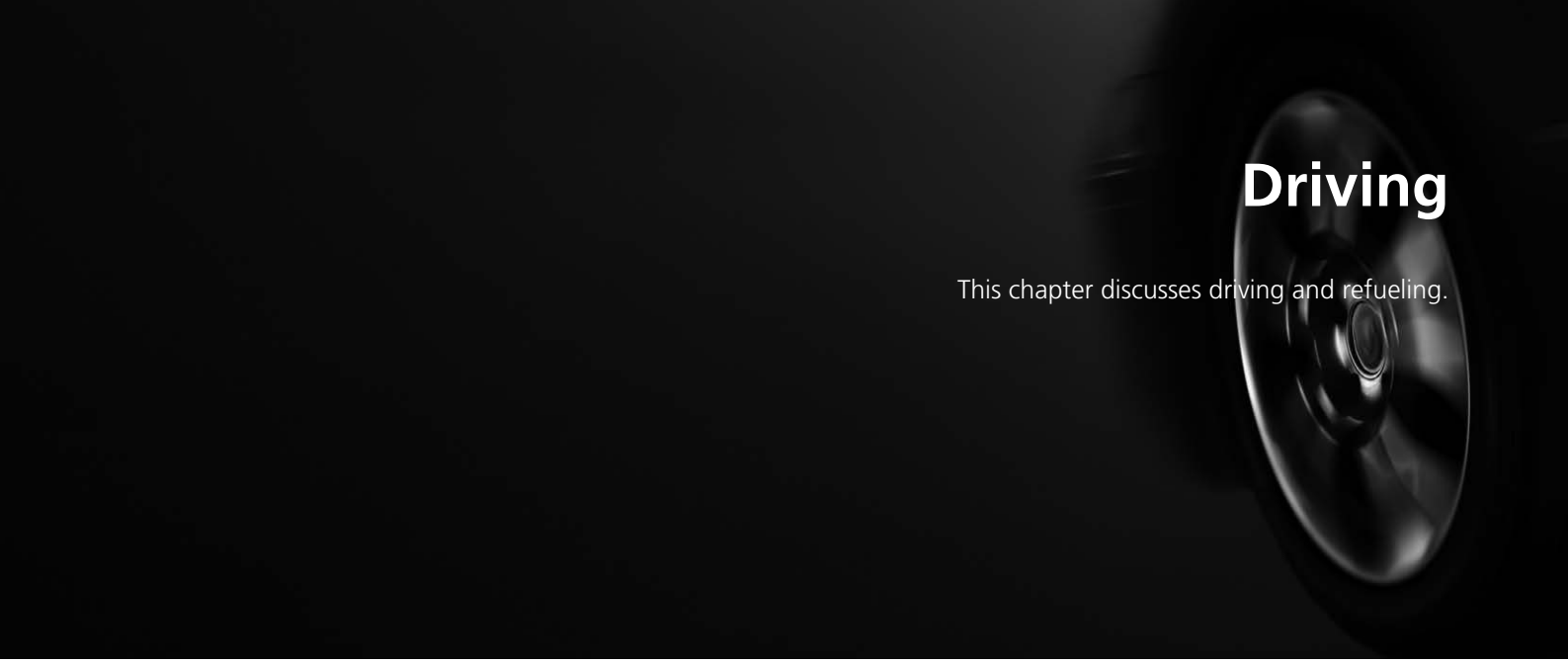
USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## ■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.


**Before Driving** ..... 408
**Towing a Trailer** ..... 412
**When Driving**
- Starting the Engine ..... 413
- Precautions While Driving ..... 419
- Continuously Variable Transmission ... 421
- Shifting ..... 422, 425
- ECON Button* ..... 430
- Drive Mode Switch* ..... 431
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .... 434
- Agile Handling Assist ..... 436
- Deflation Warning System* ..... 437
- LaneWatch* ..... 439

Models with LED headlights
- Adjusting Headlight Distribution ..... 442

**Honda Sensing** ..... 444
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ..... 447
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 460
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .... 482
- Road Departure Mitigation System ... 496
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ..... 504
- Front Wide View Camera ..... 509

**Braking**
- Brake System ..... 511
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 518
- Brake Assist System ..... 519
- Emergency Stop Signal ..... 520

**Parking Your Vehicle**
- When Stopped ..... 521
- Parking Sensor System* ..... 523

**Multi-View Rear Camera** ..... 528
**Refueling** ..... 530
**Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions** .... 533
**Turbo Engine Vehicle** ..... 534


* Not available on all models

# Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

## ■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 575
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 411
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 215
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 222
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 211
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 210

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

**Models with manual headlight adjusting system**

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➡ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 201

**Models with automatic headlight adjusting system**

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 92

# Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

**Specifications** P. 644

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

**Specifications** P. 644

Load Limit

**⚠WARNING**

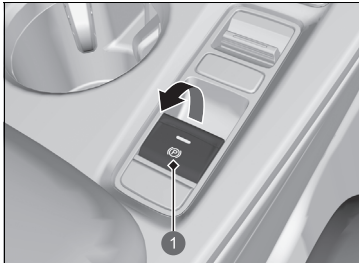
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

# Towing a Trailer

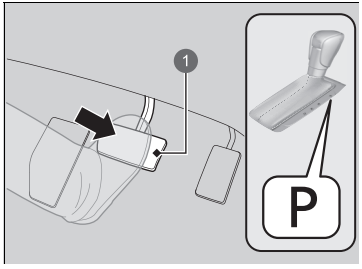
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

## Starting the Engine




1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

**1.** Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.




1 Brake Pedal

**2.** Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

**Starting the Engine**

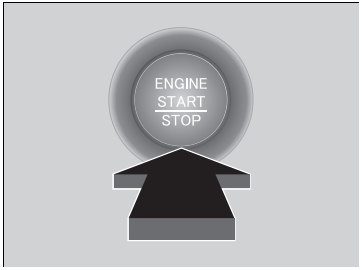
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

*Continued*




**3.** Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote or card key* close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote or card key* is weak.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 610

The engine may not start if the keyless remote or card key* is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 185



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

### ■ To start the engine




Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

❶ LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.



If the engine starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start*

**⚠WARNING**

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*



If the engine does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

### Remote Engine Start*

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

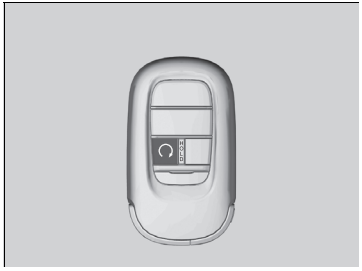
- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.
  - **Settings*** P. 131
  - **Customized Features** P. 356
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit* malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.





* Not available on all models

## ■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the [ ] button for one second.



If the engine stops successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The engine will not stop.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

### Remote Engine Start*

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the boot is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister, heated door mirrors* and seat heaters* are activated.

➡ **Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button** P. 207
➡ **Front Seat Heaters*** P. 237



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button on the keyless remote

**1.** Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

**2.** Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into [D]. Select [R] when reversing.

**3.** With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 511

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into [D], [S]*, or [L]* when facing uphill, or [R] when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

**1.** Put the transmission into [P].

**2.** Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of [P] before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.





* Not available on all models

# Precautions While Driving

## ■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

## ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

## ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

# Continuously Variable Transmission

## ■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

## ■ Kickdown

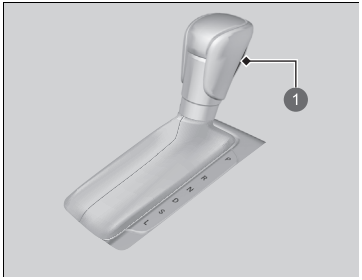
Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed.
Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Models without paddle shifter

# Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

## ■ Shift positions




1 Release Button

**P Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

**R Reverse**
Used when reversing.

**N Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

**D Drive**
Used for normal driving

**S Drive(S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration.
- To increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.

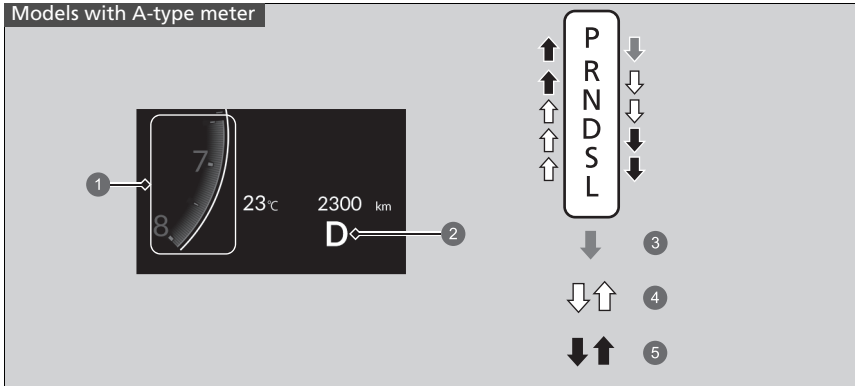
**L Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking.
- Used when going up or down hills.

Shift positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

## Shift Operation




❶ Tachometer's Red Zone
❷ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❸ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❹ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❺ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from [D] to [R] and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

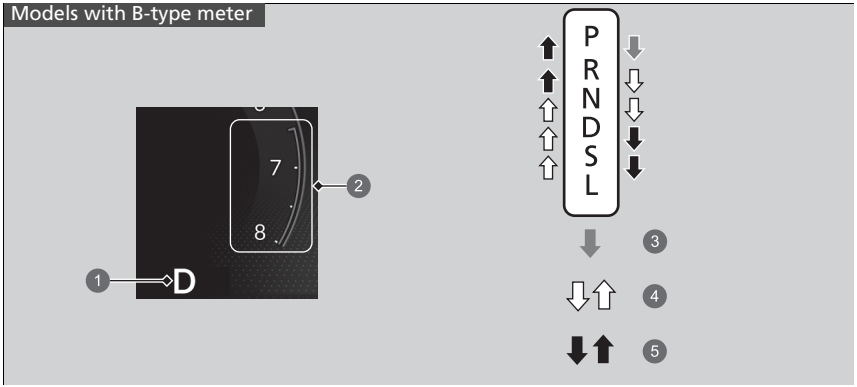
If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

*Continued*



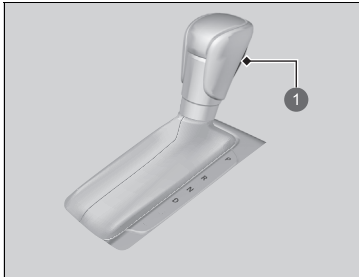

❶ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❷ Tachometer's Red Zone
❸ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❹ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❺ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Models with paddle shifter

# Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

## ■ Shift positions




1 Release Button

**P Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

**R Reverse**
Used when reversing.

**N Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

**D Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode).

Shift positions

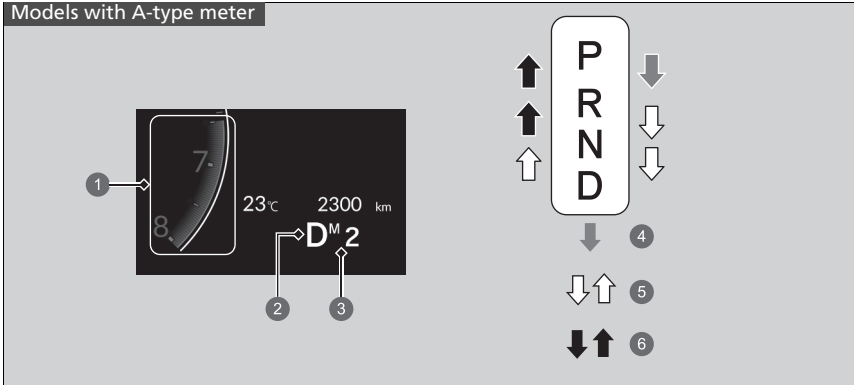
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Continued

## ■ Shift Operation

Models with A-type meter




❶ Tachometer's red zone
❷ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❸ **M** (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator
❹ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❺ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❻ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

### Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

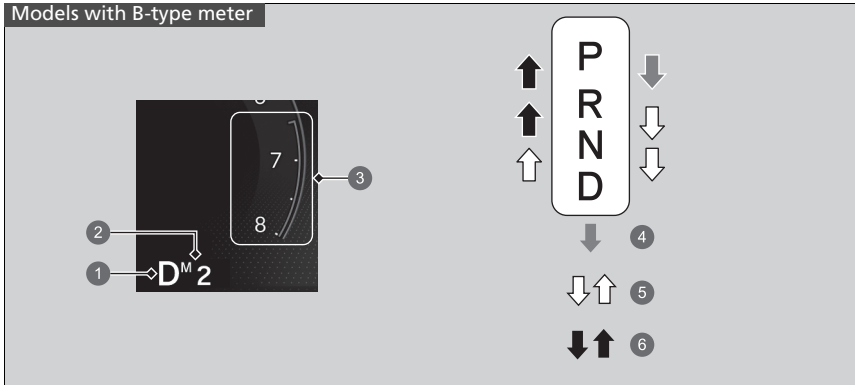
Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.




❶ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❷ **M** (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator
❸ Tachometer's Red Zone
❹ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❺ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❻ Press the shift lever release button and shift.



*Continued*

## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

**■ When the transmission is in [D]:**
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

**■ When the transmission is in [D] with SPORT mode:**
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, use the drive mode switch to select other than SPORT mode or pull the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

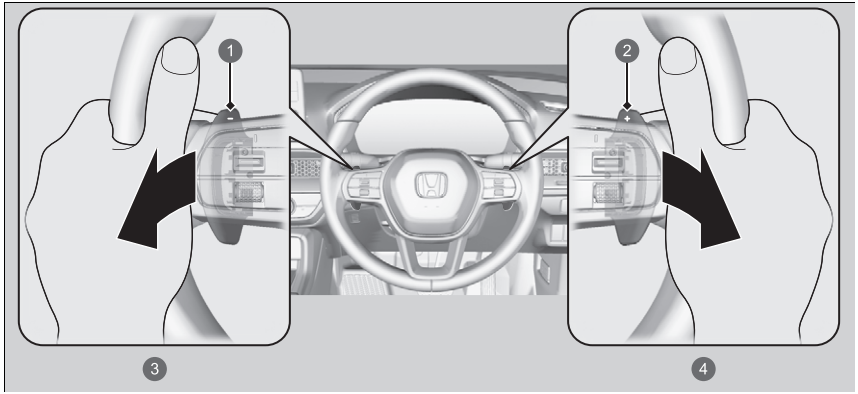
### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal [D] driving mode.

## 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



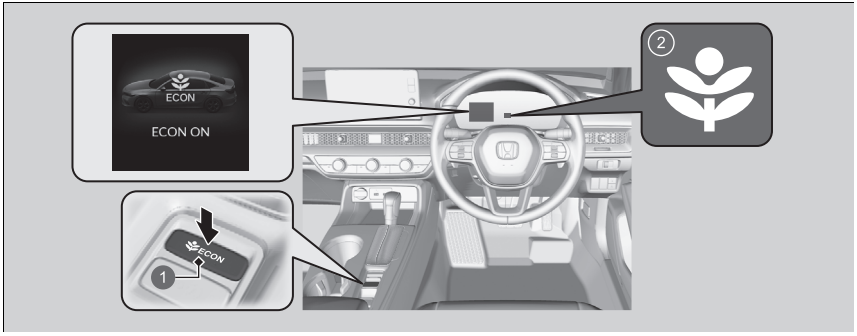

❶ −Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
❷ +Paddle Shifter (Shift up)
❸ Downshifting when pulling the −paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
❹ Upshifting when pulling the +paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

# ECON Button*




❶ **ECON** Button
❷ ECON Mode Indicator

The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission and climate control system.

ECON Button*

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation.

Due to emergency brakes operation or driving conditions, you may not be able to change the mode.

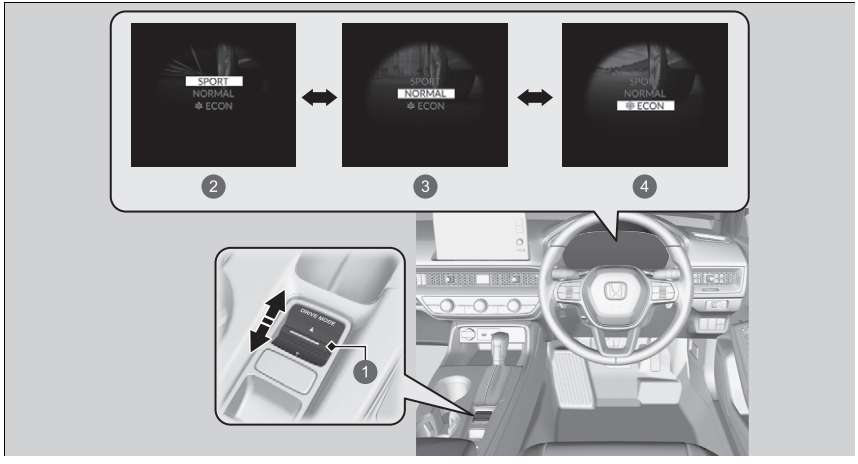




* Not available on all models

# Drive Mode Switch*

Constantly controls your vehicle's engine, transmission, EPS, brakes and VSA according to the mode you select.
You can choose between three modes, **SPORT** mode, **NORMAL** mode and **ECON** mode by using the drive mode switch.
The current mode is displayed on the driver information interface, and each mode will appear differently.
If you were driving in **SPORT** or **NORMAL** mode last time, **NORMAL** mode is selected when you set the power mode to ON.
If you were driving in **ECON** mode last time, **ECON** mode is selected when you set the power mode to ON.




1 Drive Mode Switch
2 **SPORT** Mode
3 **NORMAL** Mode
4 **ECON** Mode

Drive Mode Switch*

The mode may not be able to be changed when:
- The vehicle is turning.
- The VSA system is activating.
- There is a problem with the engine, the transmission, the VSA, and the EPS.

* Not available on all models

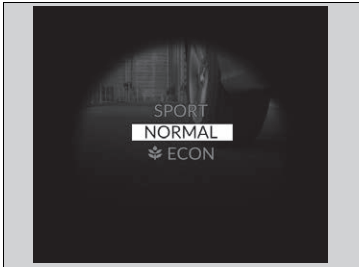
*Continued*

## ■ SPORT Mode




Enhances heightened throttle response.

## ■ NORMAL Mode




Balances handling and riding in all environments.

## ■ ECON Mode

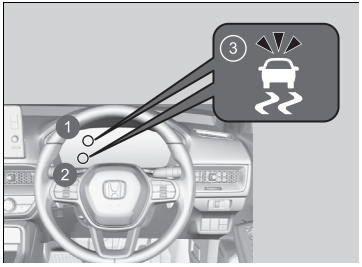



Helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission and climate control system.

# Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

## ■ VSA Operation




❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

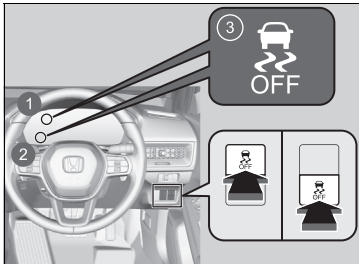
The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.





* Not available on all models

## VSA On and Off




❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ VSA **OFF** Indicator

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

# Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

## Agile Handling Assist

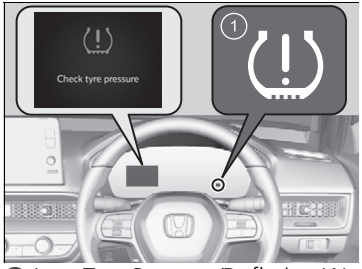
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

# Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.




This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

## ■ Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  ➡ **Checking Tyres** P. 575

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 575

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.




You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

### Deflation Warning System*

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### Deflation Warning System Calibration

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



 * Not available on all models

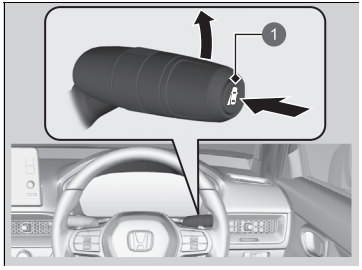
# LaneWatch*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side.




A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

❶ Camera




The system activates when you do either of the following operations:

- Press the LaneWatch button.
- Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.

The system deactivates when you press the LaneWatch button again.

❶ Camera button

LaneWatch*

**⚠WARNING**

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

**Important Safety Reminder**
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

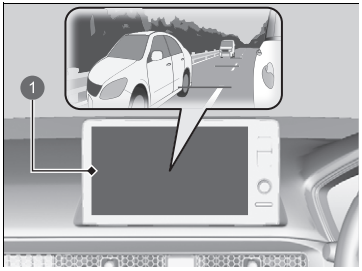
The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.

1 Audio/Information Screen

### ■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with indicator**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Indicator Off**: Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Show Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

**Customized Features** P. 356

### LaneWatch*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the transmission is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

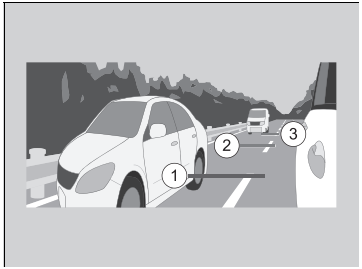
- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Reference Lines




Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line ① (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line ③ is farther away.

### Reference Lines

The area around the reference line ① (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines ①, ② and ③ on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

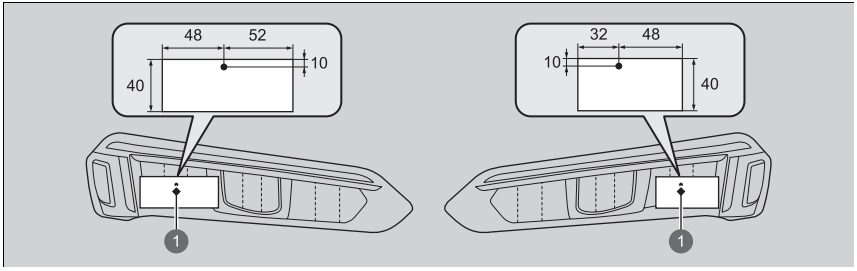
- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

Models with LED headlights

# Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.

Right-hand Drive Type




❶ Centre point

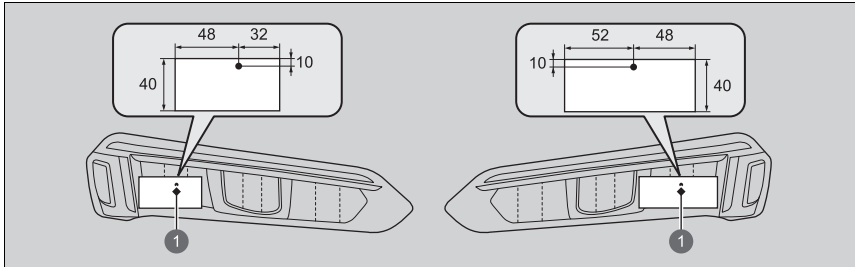
**1.** Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 100 mm*1 or 80 mm*2 long.
▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
**2.** Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

*1: For the driver's side headlight
*2: For the passenger's side headlight

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Left-hand Drive Type




❶ Centre point

**1.** Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 100 mm*1 or 80 mm*2 long.
▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
**2.** Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

*1: For the driver's side headlight
*2: For the passenger's side headlight

# Honda Sensing

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

**■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate**

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➡ P. 447
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P. 496
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ➡ P. 504

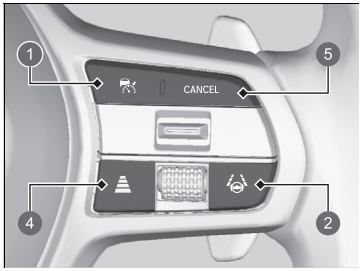
**■ The functions which require switch operations to activate**

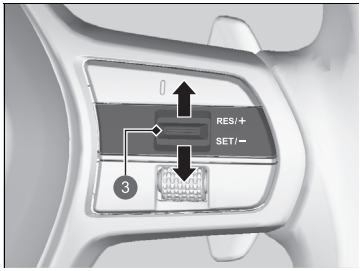
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➡ P. 460
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 482



 * Not available on all models

## Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)




❶ Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow. Or press to cancel the system.

❷ LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS. Or press to cancel the system.

❸ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up to resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

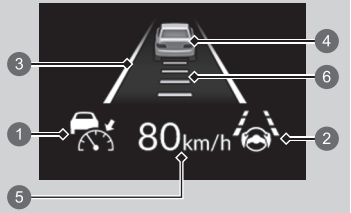
❹ Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

❺ **CANCEL** Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

*Continued*

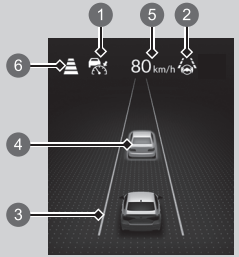
## ■ Gauge Content

Models with A-type meter




Models with B-type meter




You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Green lines: The system is on.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

Models with B-type meter
- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- Outside of control target vehicle: Gray

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

# Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).
The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

**Important Safety Reminder**
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 453

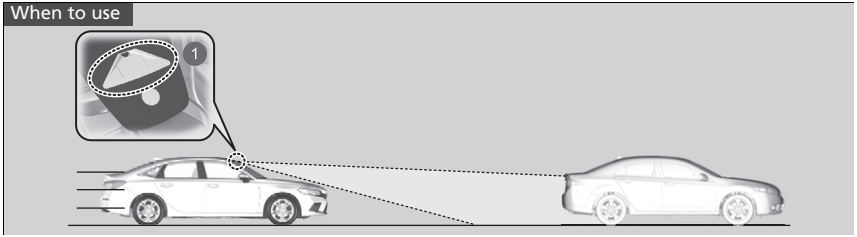
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
**Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.



*Continued*

## ■ How the system works




1 A front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle when you turn right*1/left*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type
*2: Left-hand Drive Type

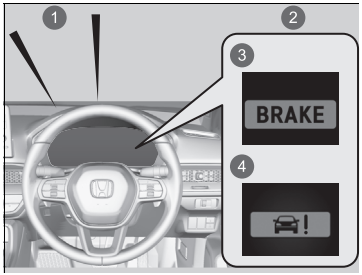
How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 453

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

### ■ When the system activates




The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

1. Audible Alert
2. Visual Alerts
3. Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
4. Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

You can change the distance (**Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2], **Normal** or **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2]) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through the driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

**Settings*** P. 131
**Customized Features** P. 356

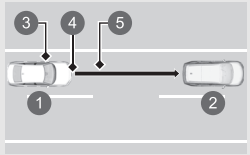
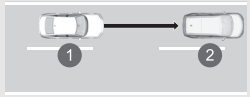
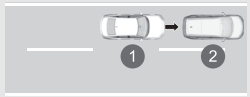
*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

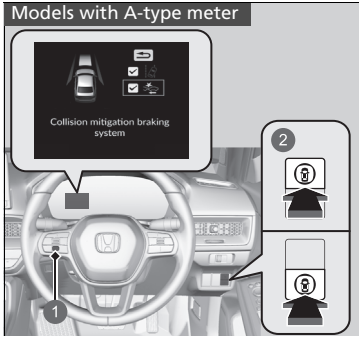
| Distance between vehicles | | CMBS | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | The sensors detect a vehicle | Audible & Visual WARNINGS | Braking |
| Stage one |  | There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you. | When in **Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2], visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2], at a shorter distance than in **Normal**. | — |
| Stage two |  | The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced. | Visual and audible alerts. | Lightly applied |
| Stage three |  | The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable. | | Forcefully applied |

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2]
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2]

*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models

## ■ CMBS On and Off

Models with A-type meter




❶ Left Selector Wheel
❷ Safety Support Switch

When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

**1.** Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

**2.** Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

**2.** Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to gray when the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 453

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

You can also select safety support content from the driver information interface.

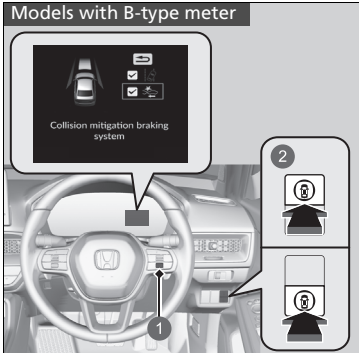
➡ **Driver Information Interface** P. 115
➡ **Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area)** P. 146

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




❶ Right Selector Wheel
❷ Safety Support Switch

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

*Continued*

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.



 * Not available on all models

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians or bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

*Continued*

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right*1/left*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



*1: Right-hand Drive Type

*2: Left-hand Drive Type

*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right*1/left*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

■ **Automatic shutoff**

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

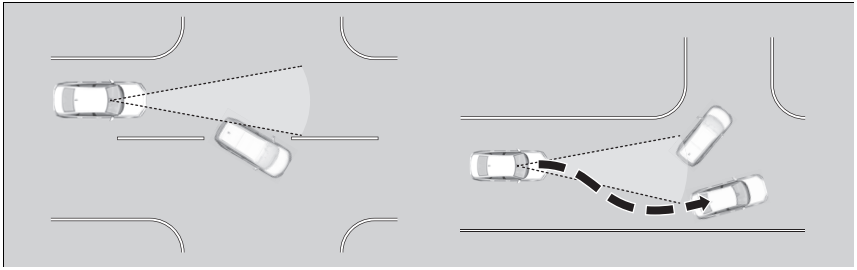


*Continued*

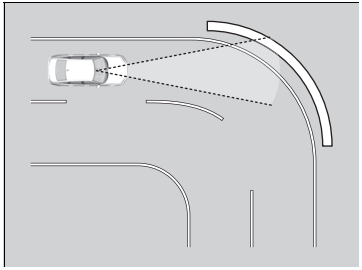
## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

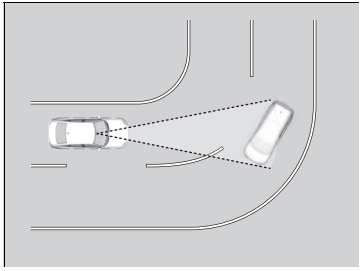
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle at an intersection, etc.



- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



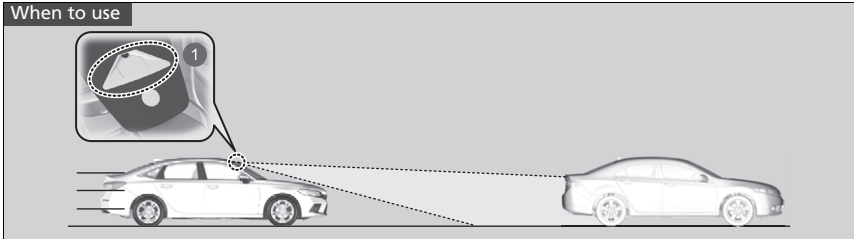
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use




❶ A front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  **No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D or S*.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

**⚠WARNING**

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

**⚠WARNING**

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

**Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

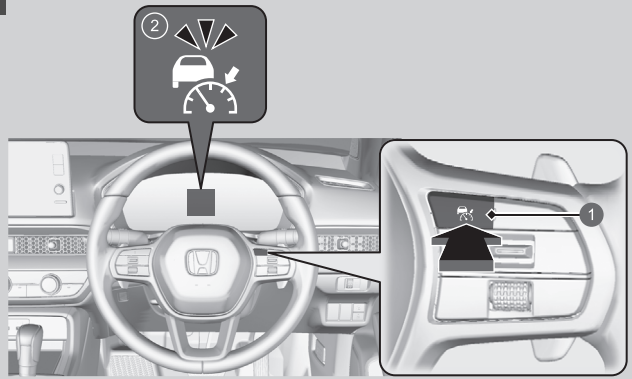




* Not available on all models

## ■ How to activate the system

How to use




❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **The (white) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Thai models

**CAUTION:** This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

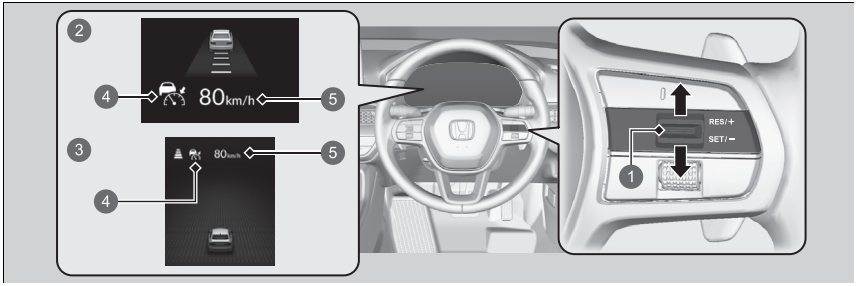
**ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 472

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.



*Continued*

## To Set the Vehicle Speed




1. **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
   Up or down
2. On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with A-type meter
3. On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with B-type meter
4. (green)
5. Set Vehicle Speed (white)

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.). It prevents the system from detecting the distance between your vehicle and vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.





* Not available on all models

**When driving at about 30 km/h or above:** Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

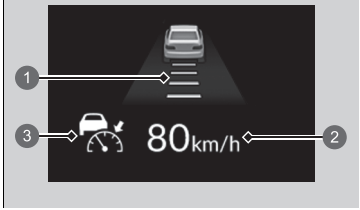
**When driving slower than about 30 km/h:** If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



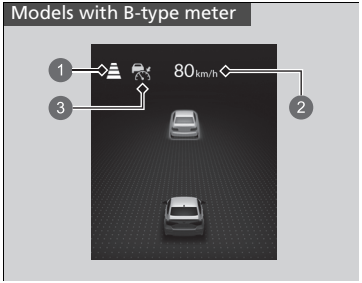
*Continued*

Models with A-type meter




❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (green)

Models with B-type meter




❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (green)

When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

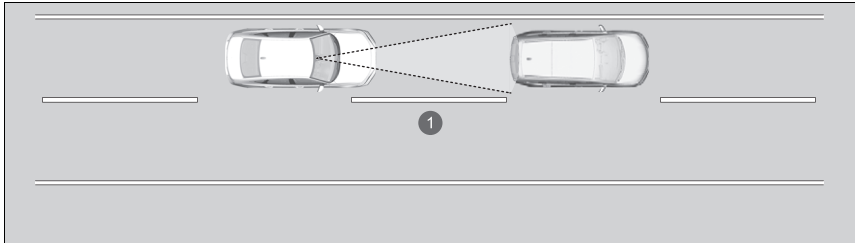
When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

## When in Operation

### There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

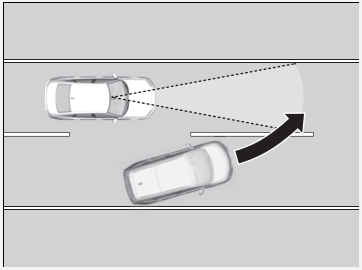
**To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 477



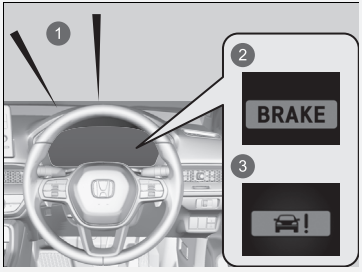

❶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



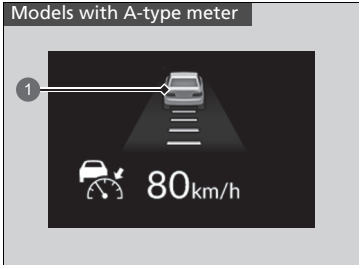
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.




❶ Audible Alert
❷ Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
❸ Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

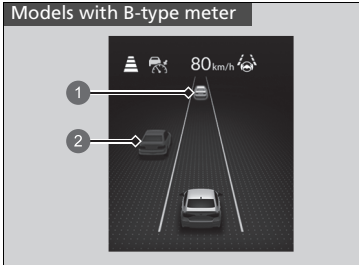
*Continued*

Models with A-type meter




❶ A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

Models with B-type meter




A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

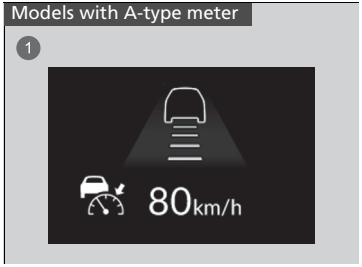
❶ Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green

❷ Outside of control target vehicle: Gray

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

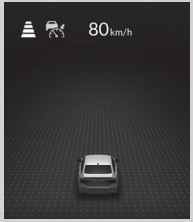
## ■ There is no vehicle ahead

Models with A-type meter




1 A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter




Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

On steep downhill during ACC with Low Speed Follow, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.
A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

➔ **Settings*** P. 131
➔ **Customized Features** P. 356



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

When in Operation

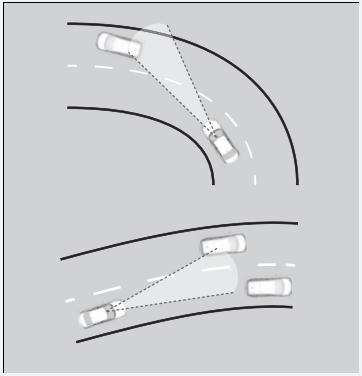
**Limitations**

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 472

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).

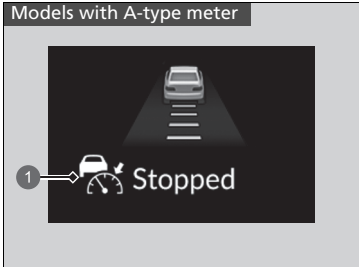


- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

*Continued*

## ■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

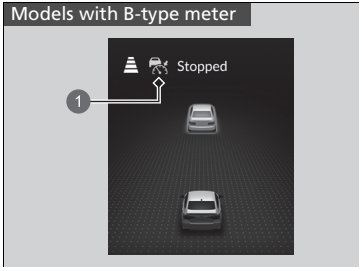
Models with A-type meter




Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the gauge blinks. If you press the **RES/+ /SET/–** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

❶ (green)

Models with B-type meter




❶ (green)

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

**⚠WARNING**

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

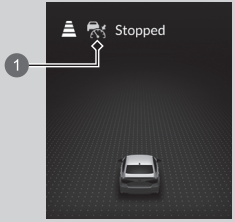
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Models with A-type meter




❶ (green)

Models with B-type meter




❶ (green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.



*Continued*

## ■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

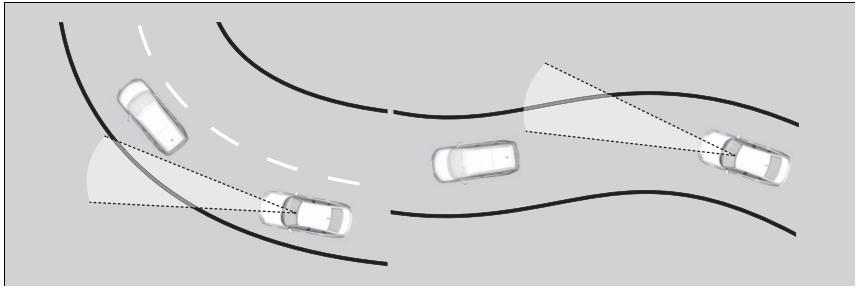
**Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.
- The parking brake is applied.

* Not available on all models

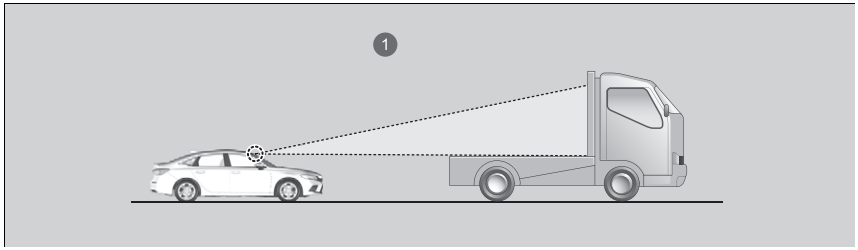
*Continued*

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly**

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.




1 Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

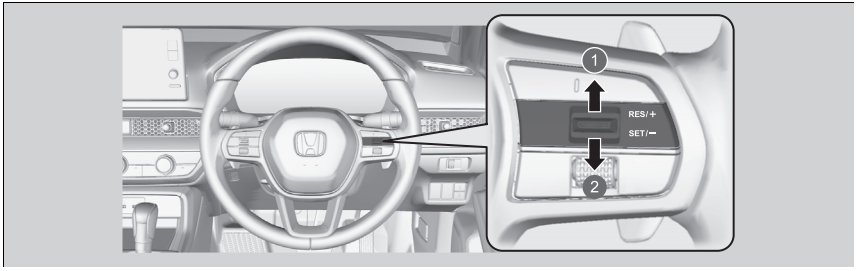
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.



*Continued*

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/–** switch on the steering wheel.




❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

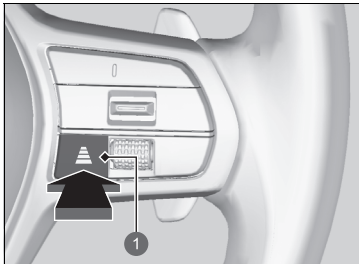
- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

### To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## To Set or Change Following-interval




❶ Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.



*Continued*

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

| Following-interval | | When the Set Speed is: | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | 80 km/h | 104 km/h |
| Short |  *1  *2 | 26.6 metres<br>1.2 sec | 33.7 metres<br>1.2 sec |
| Middle |  *1  *2 | 34.6 metres<br>1.6 sec | 44.9 metres<br>1.6 sec |
| Long |  *1  *2 | 44.0 metres<br>2.0 sec | 57.1 metres<br>2.0 sec |
| Extra Long |  *1  *2 | 53.6 metres<br>2.4 sec | 70.0 metres<br>2.4 sec |

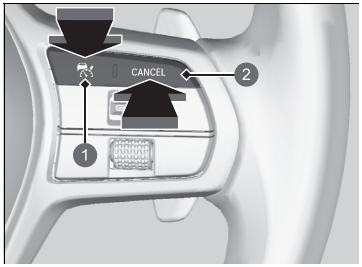
When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## To Cancel




❶ Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

### To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.

When pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, but no prior set speed (in gray) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

*Continued*

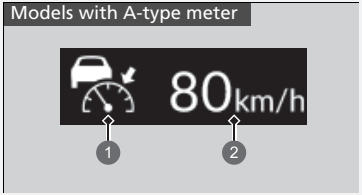
### ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

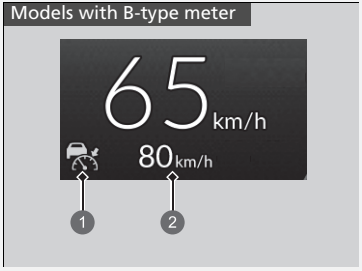
To Cancel

Models with A-type meter




❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (gray)

Models with B-type meter




❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (gray)

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

# Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

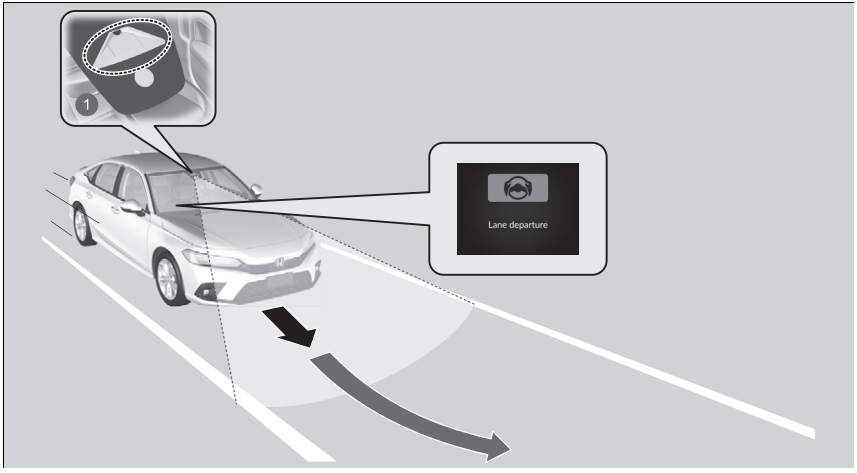
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

### ■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.




1 Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

**Important Safety Reminders**

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

**Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

**LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 492

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

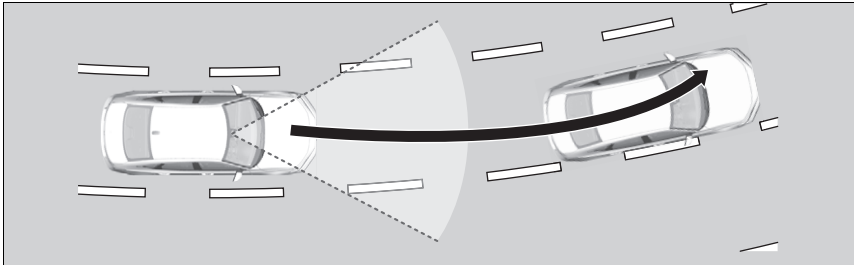
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

*Continued*

## ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

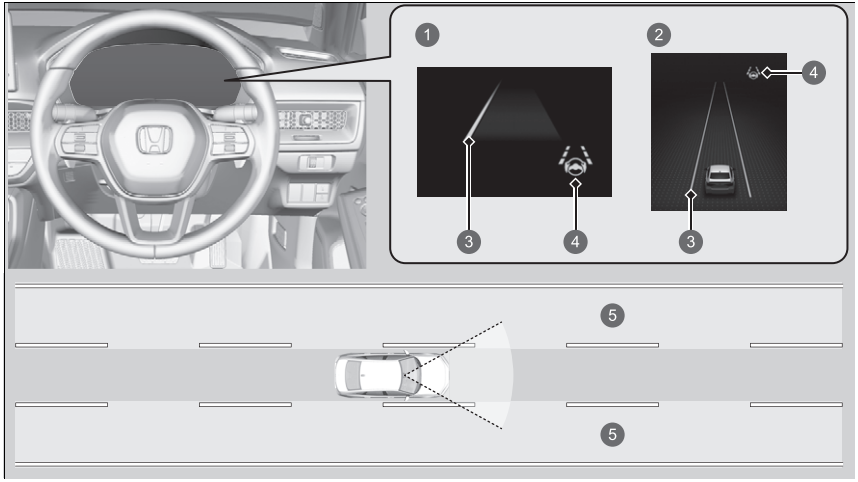


Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.




❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Amber line
❹ LKAS indicator (green)
❺ Warning Area

*Continued*

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.

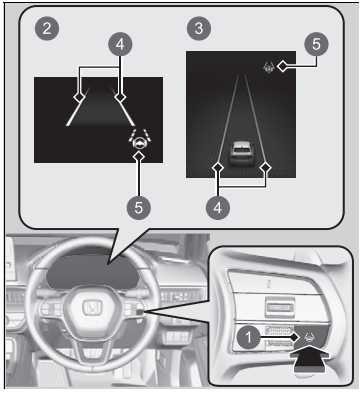
When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

## ■ How to activate the system




❶ LKAS Button
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter
❹ White Lines
❺ LKAS indicator (white)

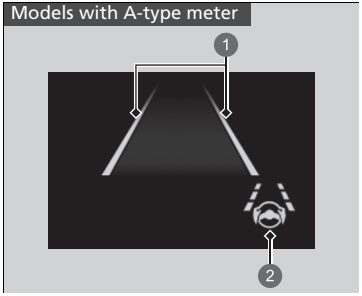
**1.** Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

When the System can be Used

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

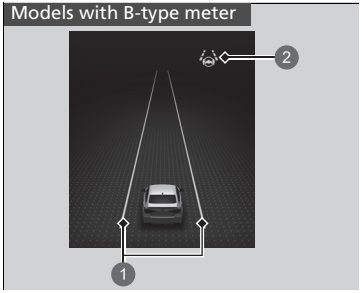
Continued

Models with A-type meter




❶ Green lines
❷ LKAS indicator (green)

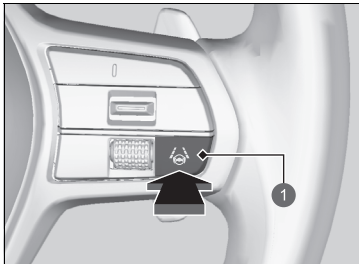
Models with B-type meter




❶ Green lines
❷ LKAS indicator (green)

**2.** Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## To Cancel




Press the LKAS button.

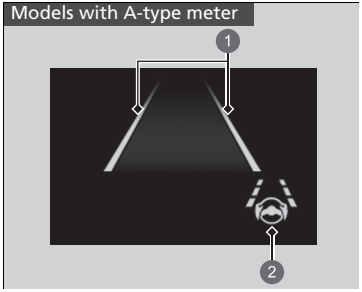
The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

1 LKAS Button



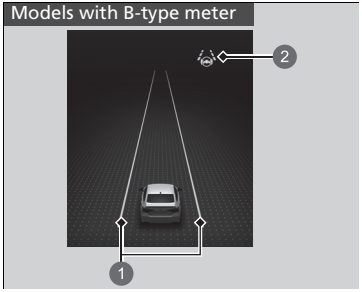
*Continued*

Models with A-type meter




1 White lines
2 LKAS indicator (white)

Models with B-type meter




1 White lines
2 LKAS indicator (white)

When the LKAS is suspended, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or dissapear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

## ■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
**Settings*** P. 131
**Customized Features** P. 356

Driving



* Not available on all models

■ **The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:**
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- When the Road Departure Mitigation System is activated.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:**
In the following cases, traffic lane lines may dissapear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may automatically be cancelled:
- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

A beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.



*Continued*

## ■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

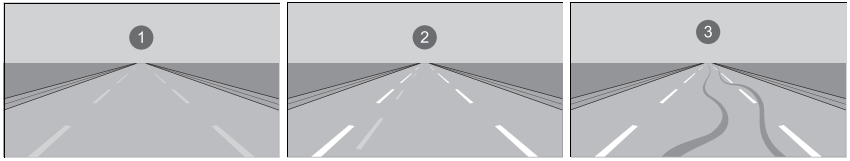
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at an intersection.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

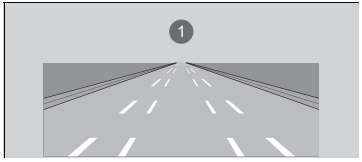
■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.




❶ Faded lines ❷ Duplicate lines ❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

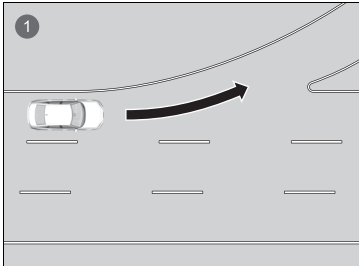



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

*Continued*

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through an exit or an intersection.




1 Lane void of lines at exit or intersection

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

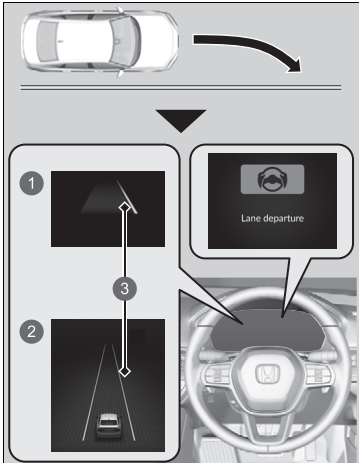


* Not available on all models

# Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## ■ How the System Works




❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Amber line

The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

**Important Safety Reminder**
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 509



 * Not available on all models

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.




If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.




After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 501

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Narrow***1/**Early***2 from the customized options using the driver information interface, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356




*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Latin American models

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

### How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

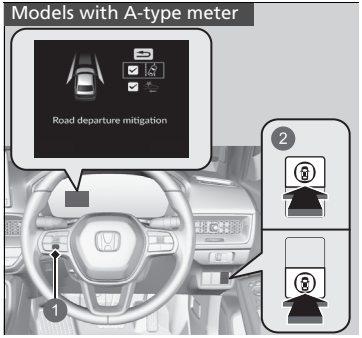
**Indicators** P. 92

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Models with A-type meter




❶ Left Selector Wheel
❷ Safety Support Switch

When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

**1.** Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

**2.** Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

**2.** Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to gray when the system is off.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on (ticked) or off (unticked) setting each time you start the engine.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can also select safety support content from the driver information interface.

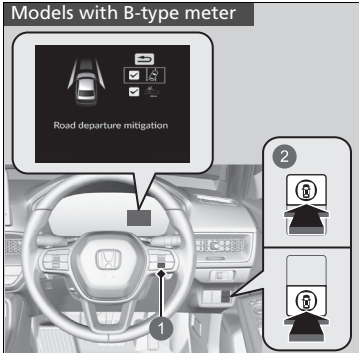
➡ **Driver Information Interface** P. 115
➡ **Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area)** P. 146

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




❶ Right Selector Wheel
❷ Safety Support Switch

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.



*Continued*

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through an exit or an intersection.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

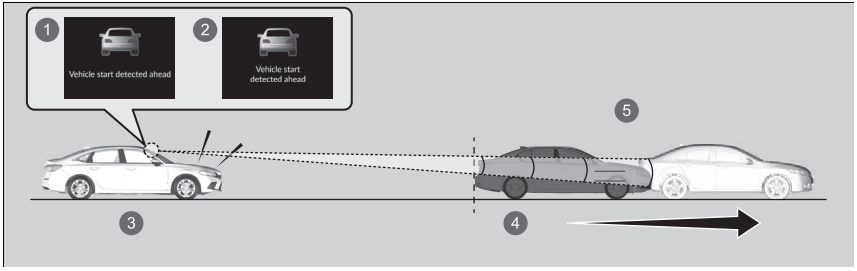
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.



* Not available on all models

# Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.




1 Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
2 Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
3 When stopped
4 Vehicle ahead is stopped
5 Vehicle ahead starts moving

## ■ How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

### ■ When the shift position is in D or S*

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

## ⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror.
**Front Wide View Camera** P. 509

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.





* Not available on all models

### ■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

In Normal mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In Early mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

➡ **Settings*** P. 131
➡ **Customized Features** P. 356

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator is on.

➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 460



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ When the System Activates




The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

❶ Audible Alert
❷ Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
❸ Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

## ■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel where the whole vehicle may not be illuminated due to low-light conditions.
- Driving into low sunlight, such as at dawn or dusk.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection**

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

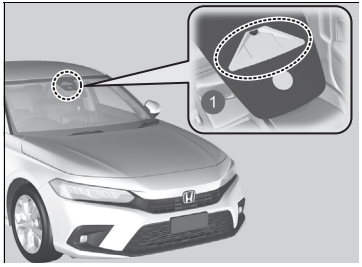
■ **Examples of other limitations on system operation**

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

# Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Lead Car Departure Notification System*, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

## Camera Location and Handling Tips




❶ Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

**Front Wide View Camera**

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing conditions.**[*1]**/Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing conditions.**[*2] message appears:

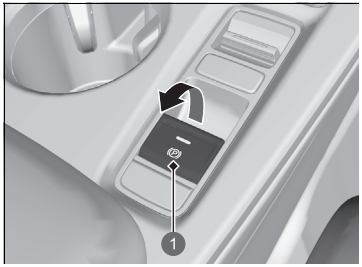
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.
  Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Cambodian,Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

# Brake System

## ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



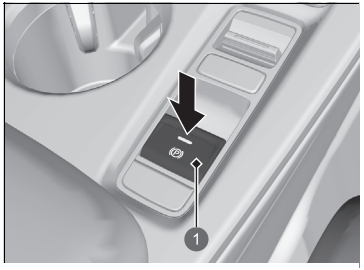
❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

### ■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

**1.** Depress the brake pedal.
**2.** Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

**If the Battery Is Dead** P. 614

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

*Continued*

### ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

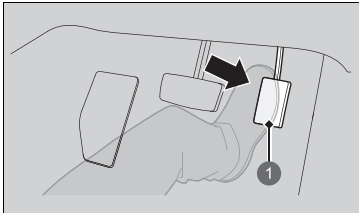
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

**Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 513

### ■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.




Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

1 Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

### ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

**1.** Put the transmission into P.
**2.** Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
**3.** Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
**4.** When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature, you can follow the procedure explained below.

**1.** Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
**2.** Set the power mode to OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

#### Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (red)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

#### Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

*Continued*

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 519
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

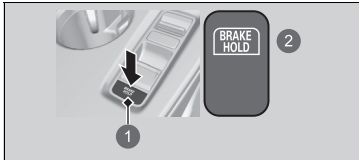
Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## ■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

### ■ Turning on the system




Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Comes On

Continued

Automatic Brake Hold

**⚠WARNING**

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

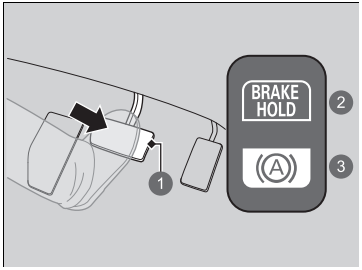
**⚠WARNING**

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

### ■ Activating the system

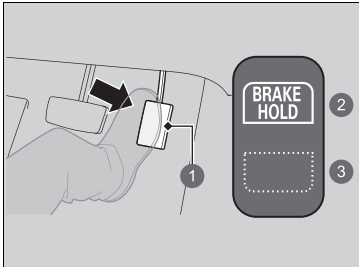



Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

1 Brake Pedal
2 On
3 Comes On

### ■ Cancelling the system




Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

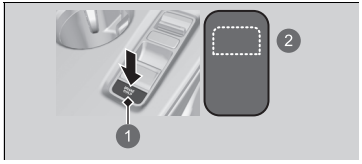
- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

1 Accelerator Pedal
2 On
3 Goes Off

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**




1 Automatic Brake Hold Button
2 Goes Off

While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.
▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.
**When Stopped** P. 521

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

# Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

## ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.





* Not available on all models

# Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

**■ Brake assist system operation**

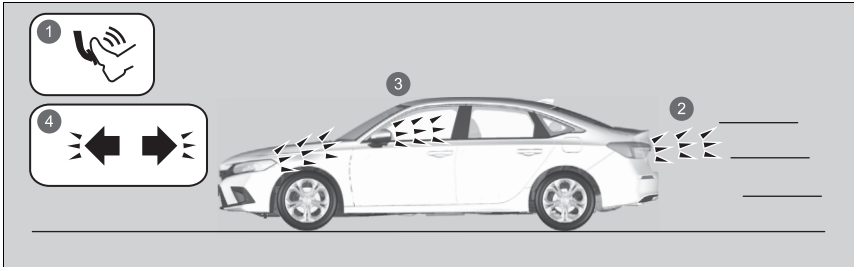
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

# Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:




1. Hard Braking
2. Brake Lights Come On
3. Hazard Warning Lights Flash
4. Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

**Emergency Stop Signal**

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

**1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly.
**2.** With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
**3.** Put the transmission into P.
**4.** Turn off the engine.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

**⚠WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

Continued

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

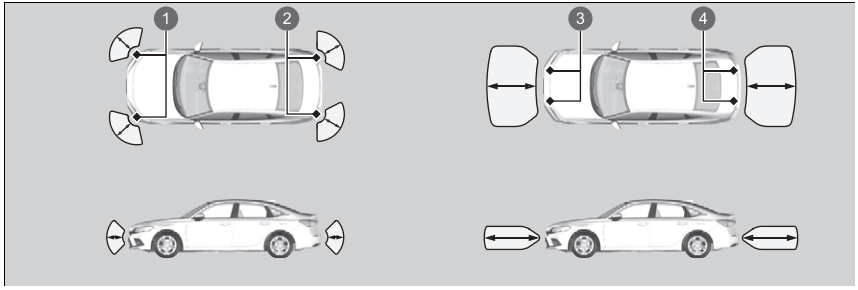
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Putting the transmission into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

# Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

## ■ The sensor location and range




❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

### Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

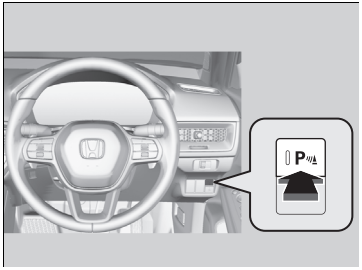
When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off

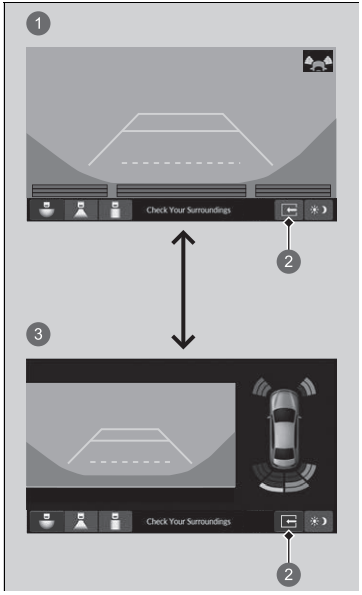


With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

## ■ Screen Operation




❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

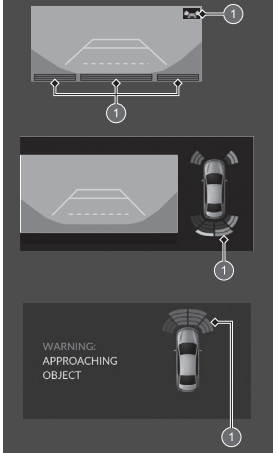
Screen Operation

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If there is a malfunction in the system.

*Continued*

■ **When the distance between your vehicle and detected obstacles becomes shorter**

| Interval between beeps | Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle | | Indicator | Driver information interface | Audio/information screen |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Corner Sensors | Centre Sensors | | | |
| Moderate | — | Front: About 100-60 cm<br>Rear: About 110-60 cm | Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Yellow*3 |  |  |
| Short | About 60-45 cm | About 60-45 cm | Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Amber | | |
| Very short | About 45-35 cm | About 45-35 cm | | | |
| Continuous | About 35 cm or less | About 35 cm or less | Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Red | | |

*1:On the driver information interface
*2:On the audio/information screen
*3:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

**1.** Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
**2.** Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
**3.** Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
▶ The beeper sounds once.
**4.** Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

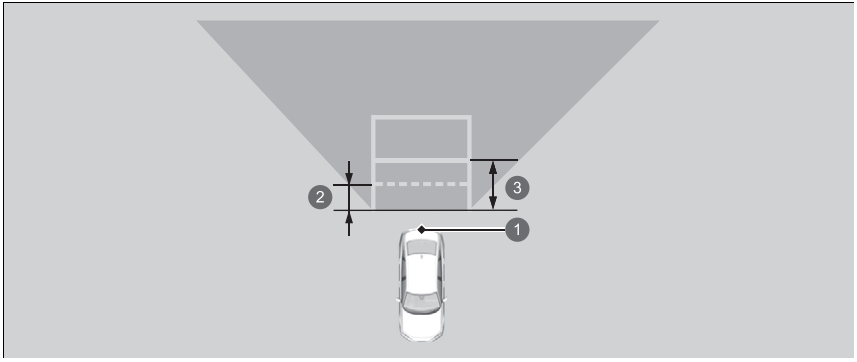
Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you put the transmission into R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

### ■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area




❶ Camera
❷ Approx. 50 cm
❸ Approx. 1 m

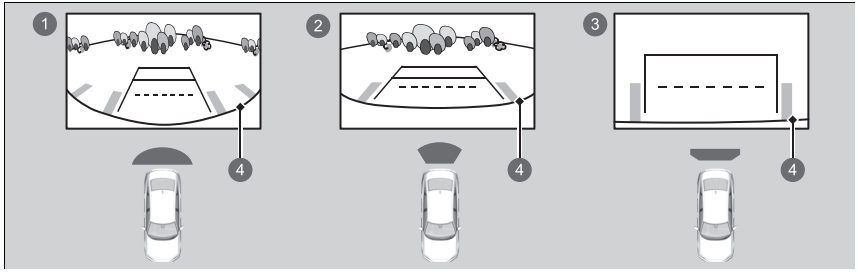
About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.




❶ Wide View Mode
❷ Normal View Mode
❸ Top Down View Mode
❹ Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
**Customized Features** P. 276, 356

**Fixed Guideline**
**ON:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
**OFF:** Guidelines do not appear.
**Dynamic Guideline**
**ON:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
**OFF:** Guidelines do not move.

# Fuel Information

## ■ Fuel recommendation

Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 90 can lead to engine damage.

Models for other countries

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

## ■ Fuel tank capacity: 47 L

## ■ Engine cleaner

Regular use of Injector Cleaning Additives may be required depend on quality of local fuel.

Fuel Information

NOTICE

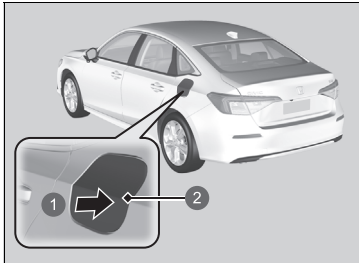
Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

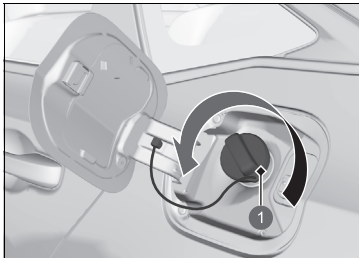
Thai models

Immediately after refueling, especially when you have switched to another type of fuel, the engine and fuel system may go into a compensating period for fuel performance.
It will be required to drive moderately at a constant speed for about 10 minutes, without rapid acceleration when traffic allows. In this period, you may notice engine knocking.

# How to Refuel




❶ Press
❷ Fuel Fill Door




❶ Cap

**1.** Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
**2.** Turn off the engine.
**3.** Unlock the driver's door.
▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
**4.** Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
**5.** Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
**6.** Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

**⚠WARNING**

**Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

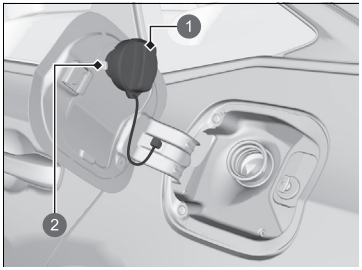
- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

*Continued*




1 Cap
2 Holder

**7.** Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
**8.** Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
**9.** After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

# Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing $CO_2$ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing $CO_2$ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

## Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

**Maintenance Schedule** P. 546

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

**Recommended Engine Oil** P. 553

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing $CO_2$ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 100 | × | Litres of fuel | ÷ | Kilometres driven | = | L per 100 km |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Kilometres driven | ÷ | Litres of fuel | = | Kilometres per Litre |

## Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the maintenance schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

**Oil Monitor System** P. 539
**Recommended Engine Oil** P. 553

The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** or **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid heavy acceleration and high speed.**[*1]/**Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.**[*2] message may appear on the driver information interface when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The message goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Models with B-type meter

The temperature gauge pointer is at the upper level when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

*1: Cambodian,Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian,Laotian and Philippine models

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.




**Before Performing Maintenance**
- Inspection and Maintenance ..... 536
- Safety When Performing Maintenance .... 537
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service ..... 538

**Oil Monitor System** ..... 539
**Maintenance Schedule** ..... 546
**Maintenance Under the Bonnet**
- Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...550
- Opening the Bonnet ..... 551
- Recommended Engine Oil ..... 553
- Oil Check ..... 555
- Adding Engine Oil ..... 556
- Engine Coolant ..... 557
- Transmission Fluid ..... 560
- Brake Fluid ..... 561
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid ..... 562
- Fuel Filter ..... 562

**Replacing Light Bulbs** ..... 563
**Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** .... 573
**Checking and Maintaining Tyres**
- Checking Tyres ..... 575
- Wear Indicators ..... 576
- Tyre Service Life ..... 576
- Tyre and Wheel Replacement ..... 577
- Tyre Rotation ..... 578
- Snow Traction Devices ..... 580

**Battery** ..... 581
**Remote Transmitter Care**
- Replacing the Remote Battery ..... 584

**Climate Control System Maintenance** .... 587
**Cleaning**
- Interior Care ..... 589
- Exterior Care ..... 592

**Accessories and Modifications** ..... 595

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 546

### ■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

**■ Routine inspections**

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

**■ Periodic inspections**

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 561
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 575
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 563
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 573



 * Not available on all models

# Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

## ■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

**⚠WARNING**

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

**⚠WARNING**

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

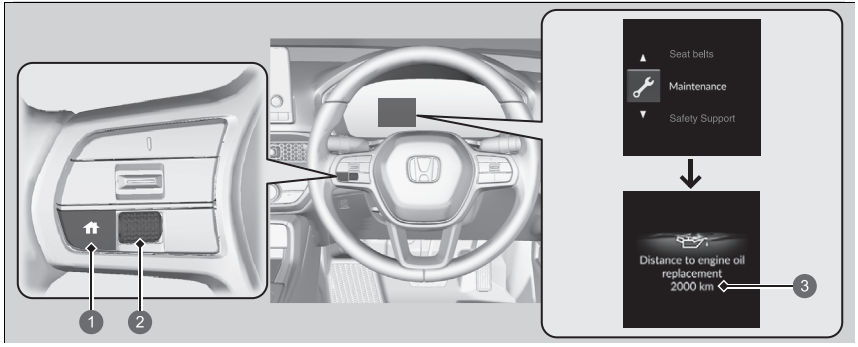
The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The warning message notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

## Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Models with A-type meter

**1.** Set the power mode to ON.
**2.** Press the (home) button.
**3.** Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
**4.** Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.




❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period

The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*Continued*

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

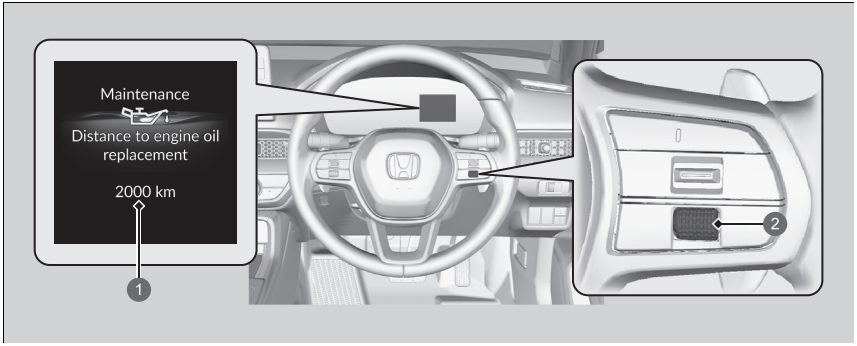
By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

Models with B-type meter

**1.** Set the power mode to ON.

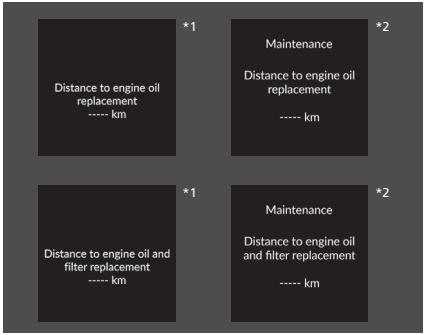
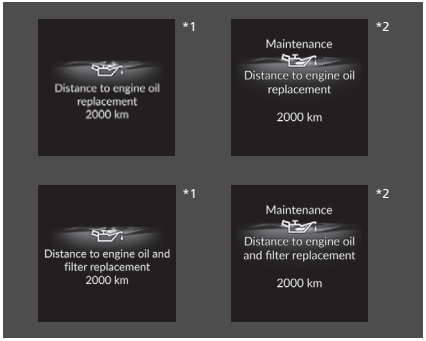
**2.** Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.



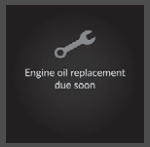
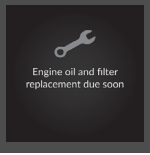
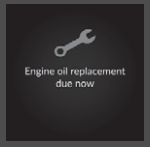
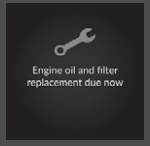

❶ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period
❷ Right Selector Wheel

The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

## Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

| Warning Message | Oil Life Display | Information |
|---|---|---|
| **Normal** — |  | When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change. |
| |  | When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed. |

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

| Warning Message | Oil Life Display | Information |
|---|---|---|
| **Service Due Soon**<br>  <br>  |  *1<br>  *2<br>  *1<br>  *2 | The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life. |
| **Service Due Now**<br>  <br>  |  *1<br>  *2<br>  *1<br>  *2 | The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible. |

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

| Warning Message | Oil Life Display | Information |
|---|---|---|
| **Service Overdue**<br>*3 Engine oil replacement overdue<br>*4 Engine oil replacement past due<br>*3 Engine oil and filter replacement overdue<br>*4 Engine oil and filter replacement past due | *1 Distance to engine oil replacement -10 km<br>*2 Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement -10 km<br>*1 Distance to engine oil and filter replacement -10 km<br>*2 Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement -10 km | The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately. |

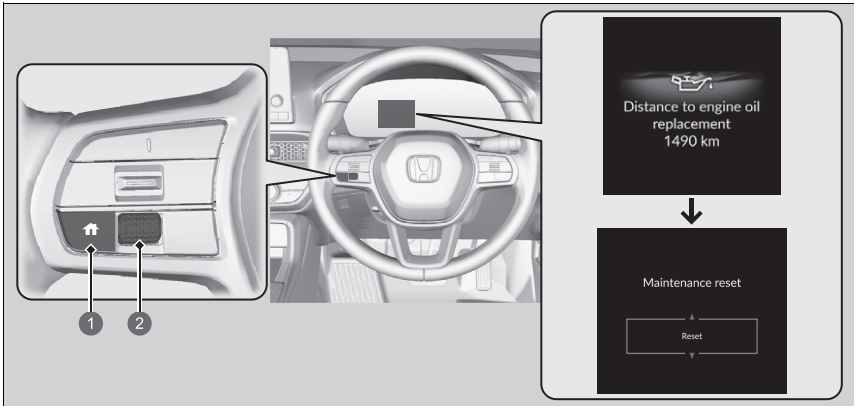
*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter
*3:Except Cambodian, Laotian, and Philippine models
*4:Cambodian, Laotian, and Philippine models

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.

Models with A-type meter

**1.** Set the power mode to ON.
**2.** Press the (home) button.
**3.** Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
**4.** Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
**5.** Press and hold the left selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
**6.** Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
**7.** Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.




❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

* Not available on all models

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

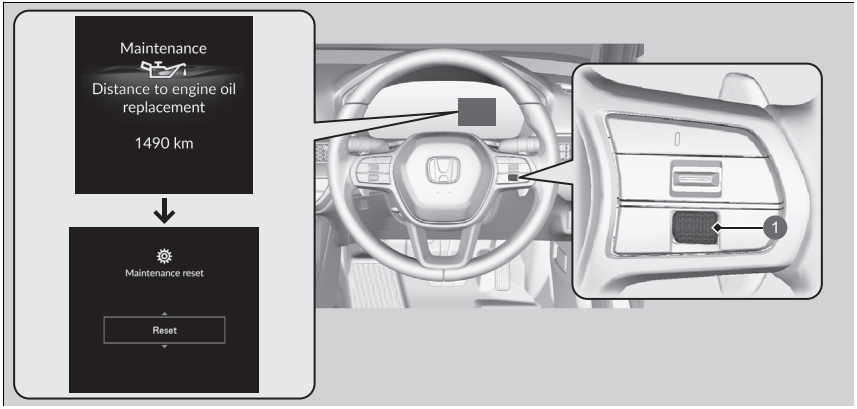
Models with colour audio
You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the driver information interface.
**Settings*** P. 131

Models with Display Audio
You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.
**Customized Features** P. 356

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Models with B-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed.
3. Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Roll the right selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
5. Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.




❶ Right Selector Wheel

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except South African models

| Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first. | km X 1,000 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 |
| Replace engine oil | | When indicator comes on or 1 year | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace engine oil filter | | When indicator comes on or 2 years | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace air cleaner element | | Every 30,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| Inspect valve clearance | Except E85 | Every 120,000 km*1 | | | | | | | | | |
| | E85 | Every 40,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace spark plugs | Except E85 | Every 100,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| | E85 | Every 60,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| Inspect drive belts | | | • | | • | | • | | • | | • |
| Replace engine coolant | | At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years | | | | | | | | | |
| Add genuine injector cleaner agent*2 | | Every 10,000 km or 1 year | | | | | | | | | |

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Grand Cayman.
Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following countries, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details: Bangladesh, Botswana, Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Jamaica, Lesotho, Mauritius, Mozambique, Nepal, Philippines, Seychelles, Sri Lanka, Swaziland, and Vietnam.

| Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first. | | km X 1,000 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 |
| Replace transmission fluid | | | | • | | • | | • | | • | | • |
| Replace dust and pollen filter | | | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| Inspect front and rear brakes | | | Every 10,000 km or 1 year | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace fuel filter*3 | Normal | | Every 140,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| | Severe | | Every 90,000 km*5 | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace fuel filter*4 | Normal | | Every 120,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| | Severe | | Every 60,000 km*5 | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace brake fluid | | | Every 3 years | | | | | | | | | |
| Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month) | | | Every 10,000 km | | | | | | | | | |
| **Visually inspect the following items:** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Driveshaft boots<br>Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots<br>Suspension components | | | Every 10,000 km or 1 year | | | | | | | | | |
| Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)<br>Exhaust system<br>Fuel lines and connections<br>All fluid levels and condition of fluid | | | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |

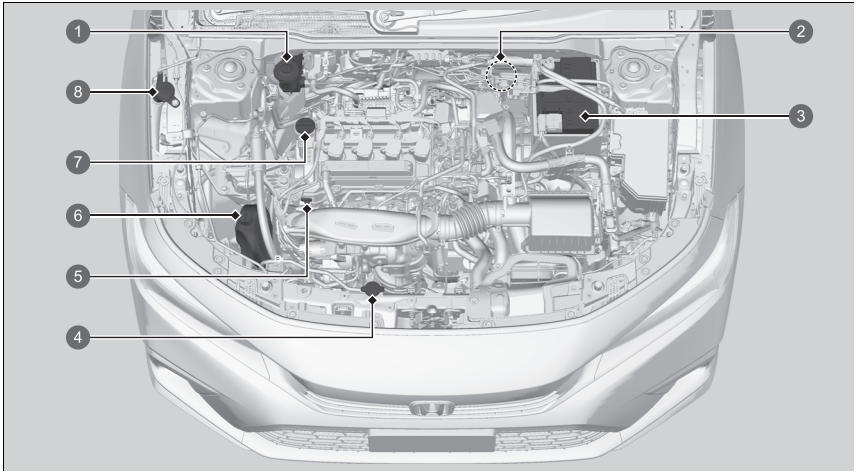
*3:Except African and Indonesian models
*4:African and Indonesian models
*5:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

## Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

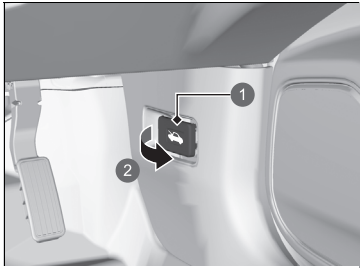
| | Km or Month | Date | Sign or Stamp |
|---|---|---|---|
| **20,000 km** (or 12 Mo.) | | | |
| **40,000 km** (or 24 Mo.) | | | |
| **60,000 km** (or 36 Mo.) | | | |
| **80,000 km** (or 48 Mo.) | | | |
| **100,000 km** (or 60 Mo.) | | | |
| **120,000 km** (or 72 Mo.) | | | |
| **140,000 km** (or 84 Mo.) | | | |
| **160,000 km** (or 96 Mo.) | | | |
| **180,000 km** (or 108 Mo.) | | | |
| **200,000 km** (or 120 Mo.) | | | |

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



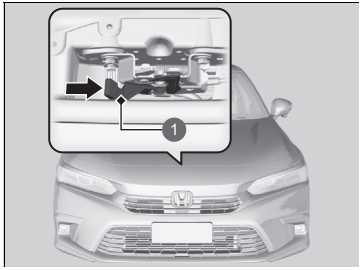

1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
3. Battery
4. Radiator Cap
5. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
6. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap
8. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)

# Opening the Bonnet




❶ Bonnet Release Handle
❷ Pull

**1.** Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
**2.** Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.




❶ Lever

**3.** Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

**⚠WARNING**

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

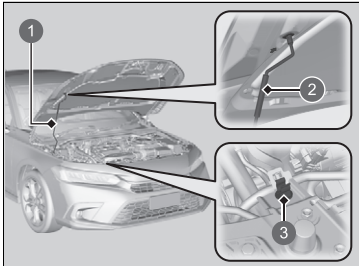
NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

*Continued*



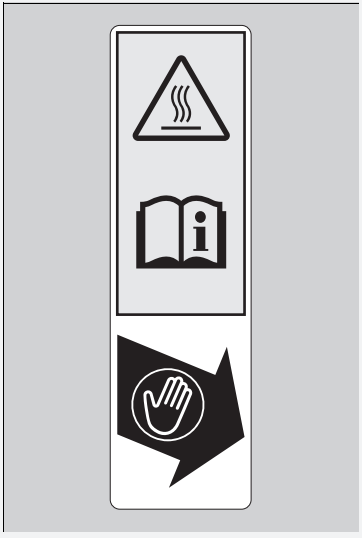

❶ Support Rod
❷ Grip
❸ Clamp

**4.** Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

Except African, Indonesian and Thai models



- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

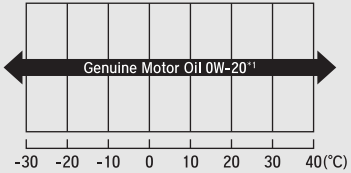
# Recommended Engine Oil

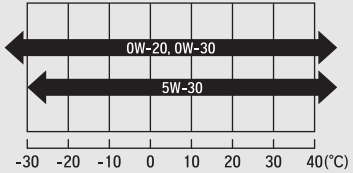
Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Singaporean models

| Genuine Engine Oil | Commercial Engine Oil |
|---|---|
| • Honda Genuine Motor Oil | • ACEA C2/C3/C5 |




*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Singaporean models

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

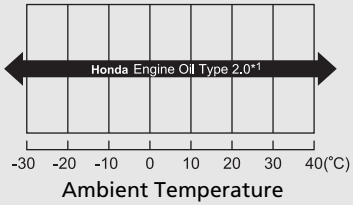
Except Singaporean models

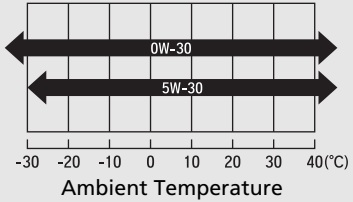
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Continued

Thai models

| Genuine Engine Oil | Commercial Engine Oil |
|---|---|
| • Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0*1 | • ACEA C2/C3 |

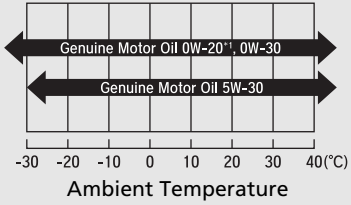


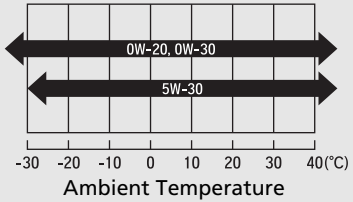




*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Except Singaporean and Thai models

| Genuine Engine Oil | Commercial Engine Oil |
|---|---|
| • Honda Genuine Motor Oil | • API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil<br>• ACEA A5/B5 |



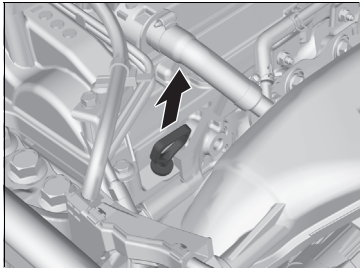




*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

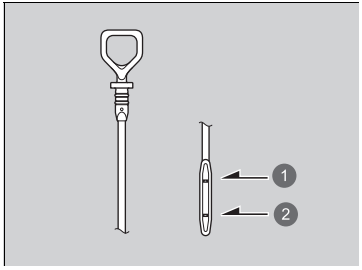
# Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



**1.** Remove the dipstick (orange).
**2.** Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
**3.** Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



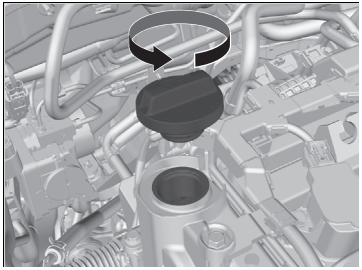

**4.** Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

❶ Upper Mark
❷ Lower Mark

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

# Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

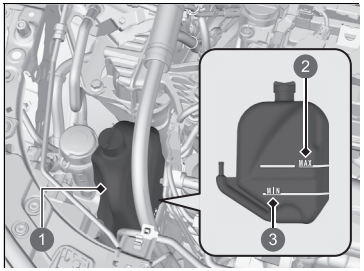
# Engine Coolant

**Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2**

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

## ■ Reserve Tank




❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Engine Coolant

**⚠WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

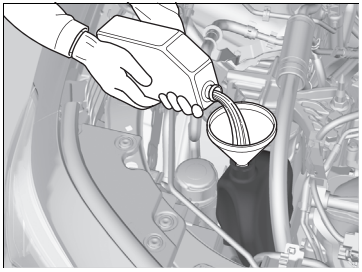
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

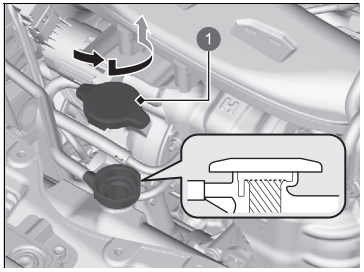
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

*Continued*



**3.** Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

## Radiator




1 Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## Radiator Cap

Left-hand Drive Type




- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

# Transmission Fluid

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 546

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

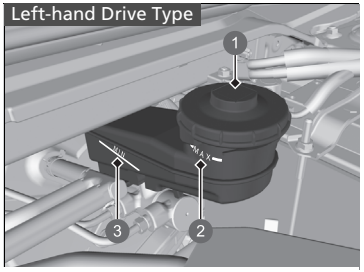
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

# Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4**

## ■ Checking the Brake Fluid

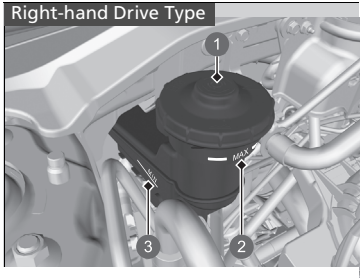
Left-hand Drive Type




The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Right-hand Drive Type




❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

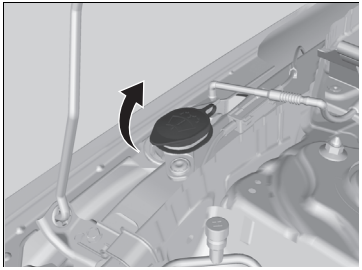
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

## Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

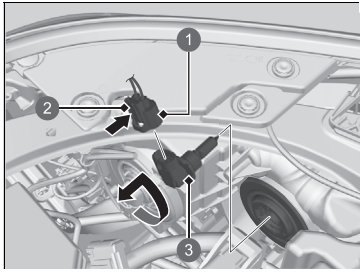
## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

| | |
|---|---|
| **High beam headlight:** | **60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*** |
| | **LED type*** |
| **Low beam headlight:** | **55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*** |
| | **LED type*** |

### High Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights




1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

1 Coupler
2 Tab
3 Bulb

Headlight Bulbs

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.
Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

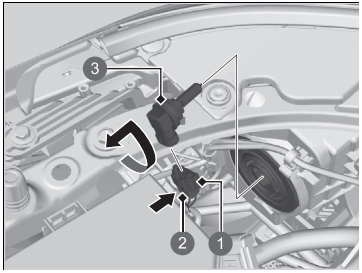


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights




1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

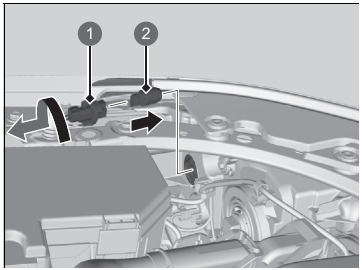
❶ Coupler
❷ Tab
❸ Bulb

# Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Front Turn Signal Light:** | **21 W (Amber)*<br>LED type*** |

Models with halogen headlights




❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

**1.** Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
**2.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with LED headlights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

## Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Fog Lights*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

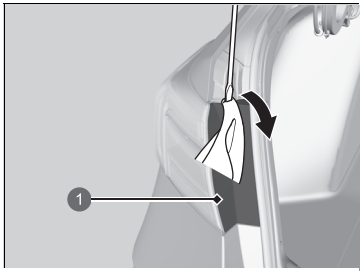


 * Not available on all models

# Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

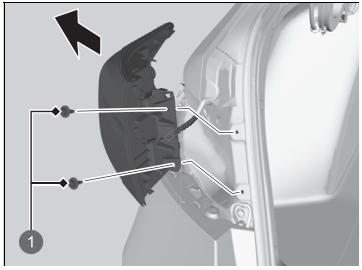
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Brake Light: LED**
**Taillight: LED**
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**




1 Cover

**1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



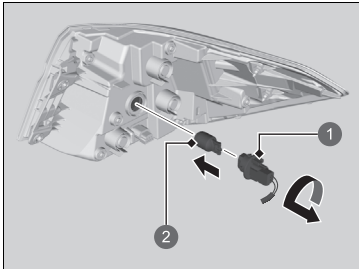

1 Bolt

**2.** Remove the bolts.
**3.** Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake lights and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

*Continued*



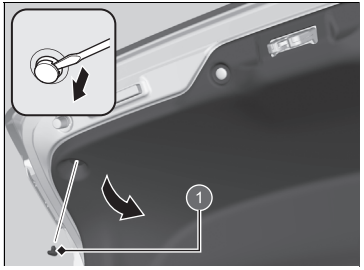

1 Socket
2 Bulb

**4.** Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
**5.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
**6.** Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

# Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

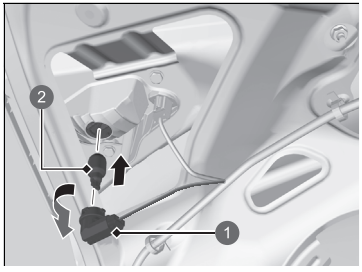
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Taillight: LED**
**Back-Up Light: 16 W**




❶ Holding Clip

**1.** Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



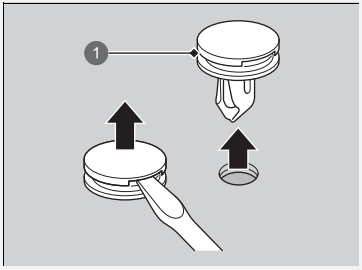

❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

**2.** Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
**3.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

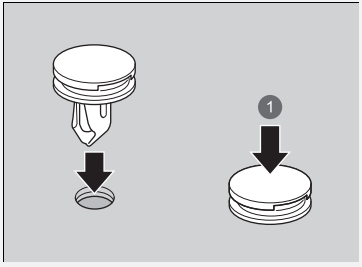
Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.




❶ Clip

Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.



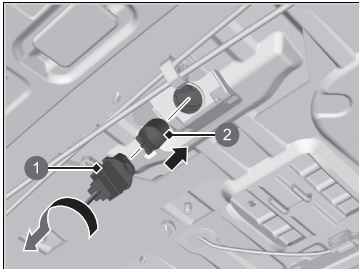

❶ Push until the pin is flat.

# High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

Models without LED high-mount brake light

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**High-Mount Brake Light: 21 W**




1. Open the boot.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

1 Socket
2 Bulb

## Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

Models with LED high-mount brake light

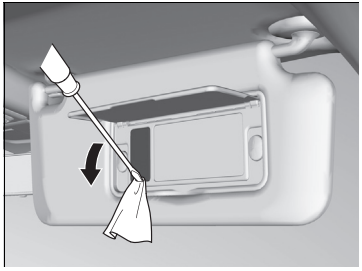
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

# Other Light Bulbs

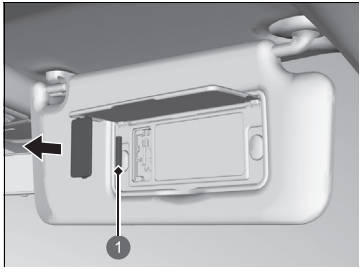
## ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W**



**1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.




**2.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

❶ Bulb



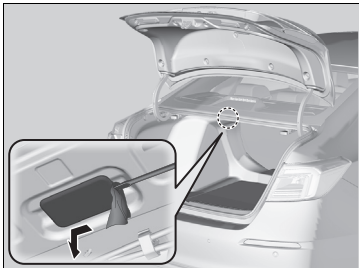
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

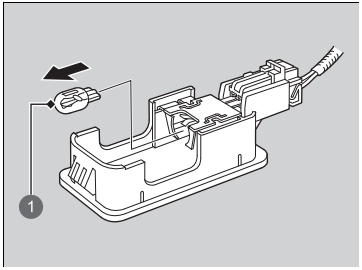
## ■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Boot Light: 5 W**



**1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



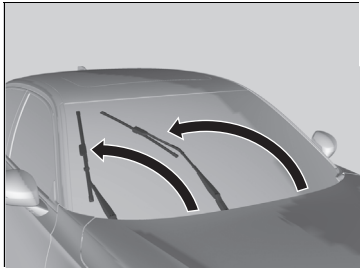

**2.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

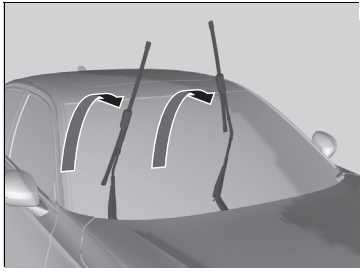
1 Bulb

## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade





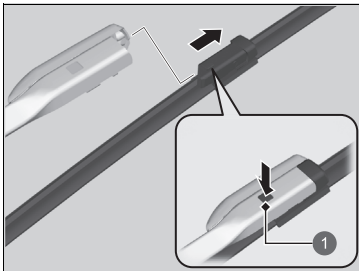
1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

Changing the Wiper Blade

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

*Continued*




1 Tab

4. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
6. Lower both wiper arms.
7. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
   ▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 576
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models



**⚠WARNING**

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

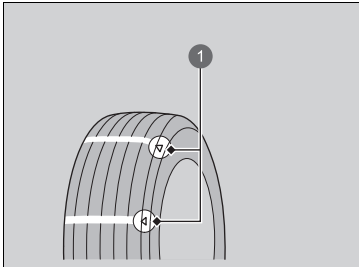
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.
➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 437

## Wear Indicators




1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

**High speed driving**

Models with 215/50R17 91V tyres

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

| Tyre Size | 215/50R17 91V |
|---|---|
| Pressure | Front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar) 35 psi<br>Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar) 33 psi |

# Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

**⚠WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

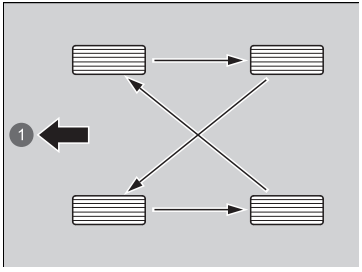
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

# Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

Models with a compact spare tyre

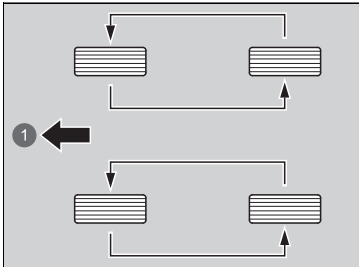
## ■ Tyres without rotation marks




Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

## ■ Tyres with rotation marks

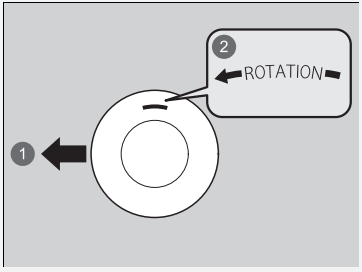



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

### Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.




1 Front
2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.

➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 437

Maintenance

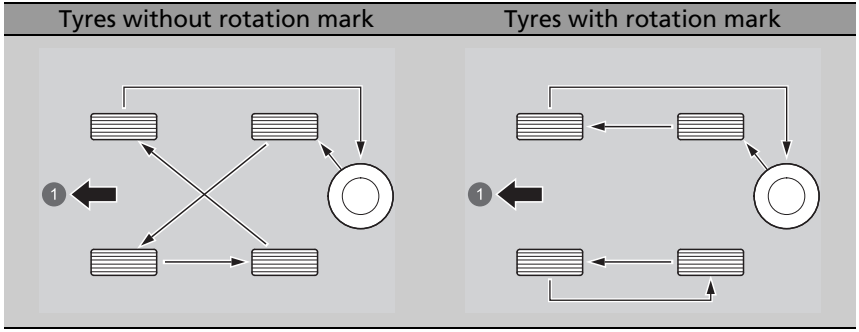


* Not available on all models

Models with a full-size spare tyre

**■ Your vehicle's tyre rotation pattern**

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.




1 Front

# Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

| Original Tyre Size*1 | Chain Type |
|---|---|
| **215/55R16 93H** | **RUD-matic classic 48489** |
| **215/50R17 91V** | **RUD-matic classic 48489** |
| **235/40ZR18 95Y** | **(not available)** |

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

**⚠WARNING**

**Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.**

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

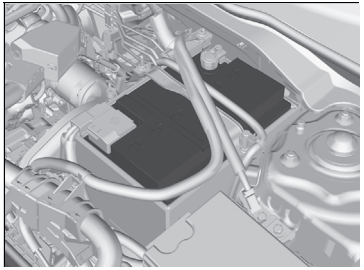
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled*.

**Reactivating the audio system** P. 248

Battery

**⚠WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

**⚠WARNING**

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Battery

**Emergency Procedures**
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

# Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

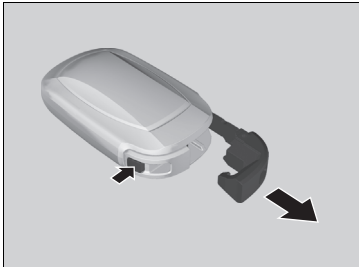


* Not available on all models

## Replacing the Remote Battery

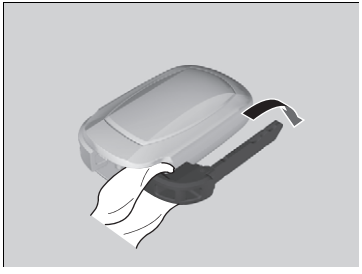
### ■ Keyless remote

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



**Battery type: CR2032**

**1.** Remove the built-in key.



**2.** Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with key grip.
- ▶ Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

Replacing the Remote Battery

**⚠WARNING**

**CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

**CAUTION:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**CAUTION:** Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

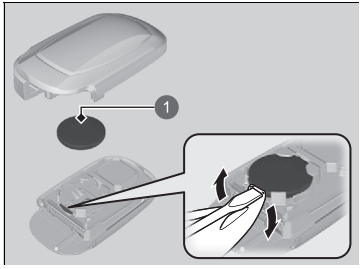
**CAUTION:** Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

**CAUTION:** Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.



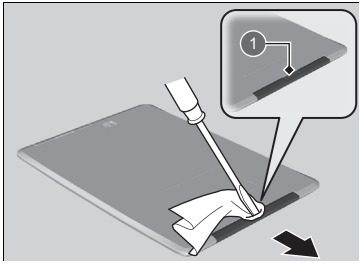

1 Battery

**3.** Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.



*Continued*

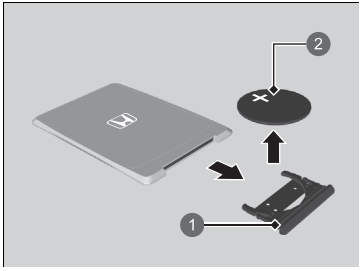
## ■ Card Key*




❶ Groove

**Battery type: CR2412**

**1.** Put the H logo side down of the card key.
**2.** Push to slide the groove of the battery holder using a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the battery holder.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the battery holder.




❶ Battery Holder
❷ Battery

**3.** Remove the battery. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
**4.** To reinstall the battery holder, push the battery holder into the card key until it clicks.
▶ Make sure to install the battery holder in the correct side.



 * Not available on all models

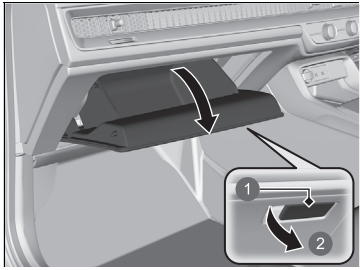
# Dust and Pollen Filter

## When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

**Maintenance Schedule** P. 546

## How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter




**1.** Open the glove box.

❶ Handle
❷ Pull

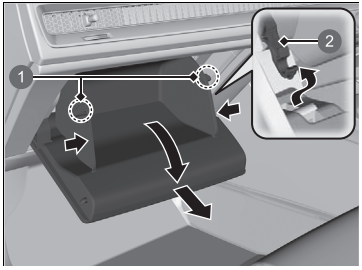
Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

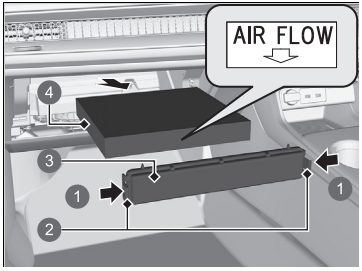
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

*Continued*




❶ Tabs
❷ Stopper

**2.** Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
**3.** Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
**4.** Remove the glove box.




❶ Push
❷ Tabs
❸ Cover
❹ Dust and Pollen Filter

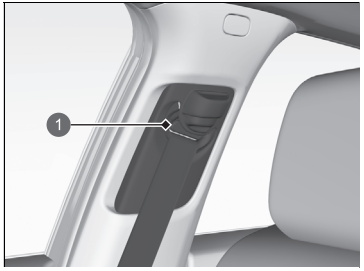
**5.** Push in the tabs on the sides of the filter case cover, and remove it.
**6.** Remove the filter from the case.
**7.** Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.




❶ Opening

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

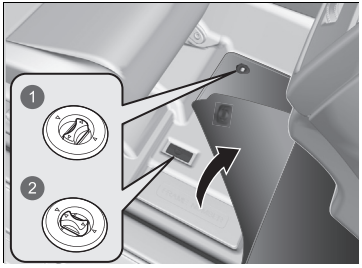
Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

*Continued*

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Floor Mats*




The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.
Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

### Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front wide view camera and the rainfall/light sensor*.

### Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

**1.** Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
**2.** Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
**3.** Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
**4.** Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

# Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

## ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

## ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

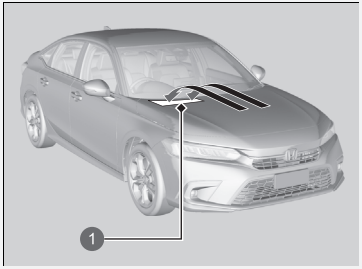
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

## ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.




1 Air Intake Vents

Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

**Changing the Wiper Blade** P. 573

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

*Continued*

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the rear seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 627
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

**⚠WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

# Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

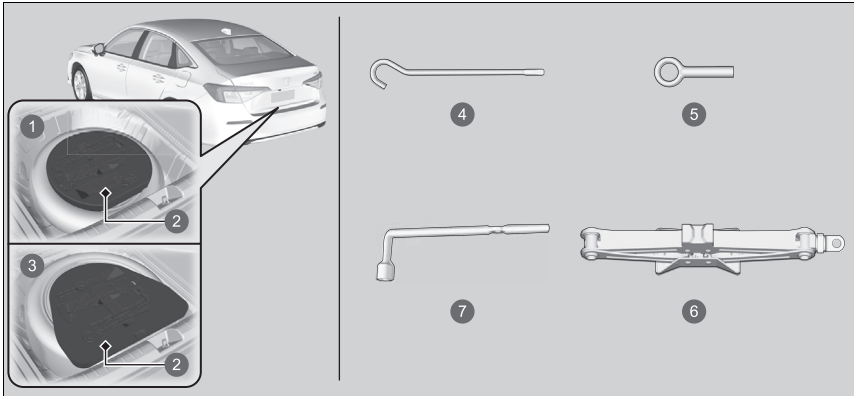
# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.


**Tools**
Types of Tools ..... 598
**If a Tyre Goes Flat**
Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 599
**Engine Does Not Start**
Checking the Engine ..... 608
If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak ..... 610
Emergency Engine Start ..... 612
Emergency Engine Stop ..... 613
**If the Battery Is Dead**
Jump Starting Procedure ..... 614
**Shift Lever Does Not Move** ..... 617
**Overheating**
How to Handle Overheating ..... 619
**Indicator, Coming On/Blinking**
If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears ..... 621
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 622
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 622
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks ..... 623
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On .... 624
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On ..... 625
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks ... 626
**Fuses**
Fuse Locations ..... 627
Inspecting and Changing Fuses ..... 636
**Emergency Towing** ..... 639
**If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door** .... 640
**If You Cannot Open the Boot** ..... 641


* Not available on all models

## Types of Tools




❶ Models with compact spare tyre
❷ Tool Case
❸ Models with full-size spare tyre
❹ Jack Handle Bar
❺ Detachable Towing Hook
❻ Jack
❼ Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

## Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre*/full-size spare tyre*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

**1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
**2.** Put the transmission into P.
**3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Models with compact spare tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

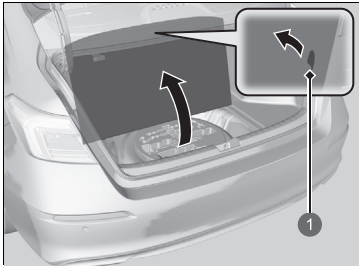
Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.



* Not available on all models

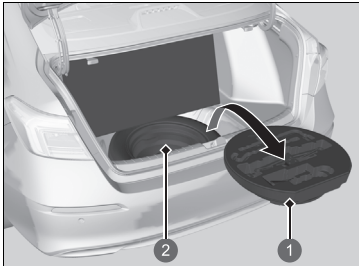
*Continued*

## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre




❶ Strap

**1.** Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.




❶ Tool Case
❷ Spare Tyre

**2.** Take the tool case out of the boot.
**3.** Take the jack, wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool case.
**4.** Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

Changing a Flat Tyre

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

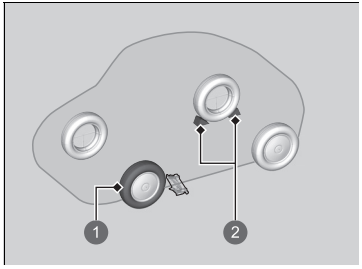
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

Models with compact spare tyre

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.




❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks

**5.** Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



**6.** Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.

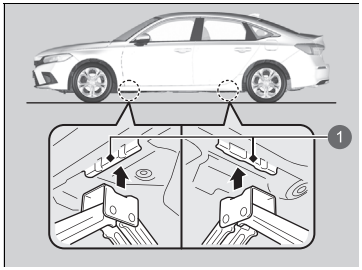


*Continued*



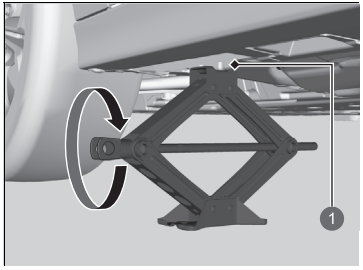
**7.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack




❶ Jacking Point

**1.** Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.




❶ Jacking Point

**2.** Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

**⚠WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

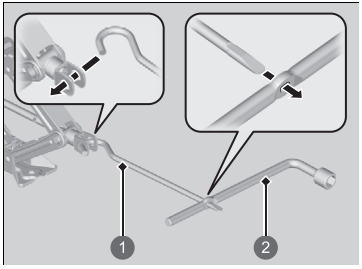
**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

*Continued*



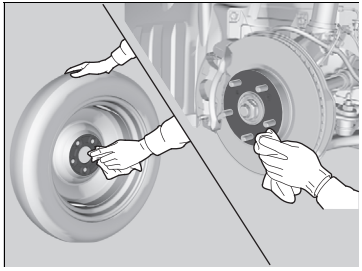

1 Jack Handle Bar
2 Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

**3.** Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

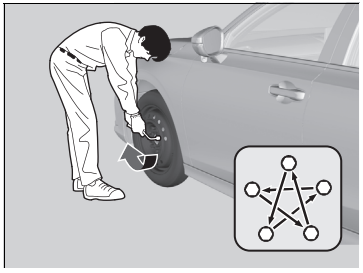
## Replacing the Flat Tyre



**1.** Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



**2.** Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
**3.** Mount the spare tyre.
**4.** Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



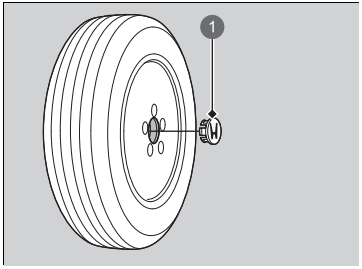
**5.** Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
**Wheel nut torque:**
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

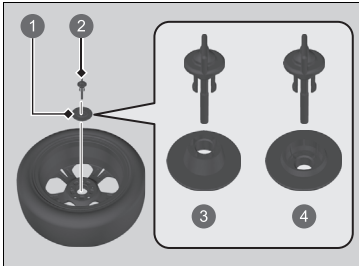
*Continued*

## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre




❶ Centre cap

**1.** Remove the centre cap.




❶ Spacer Cone
❷ Wing Bolt
❸ For compact spare tyre
❹ For full-size tyre

**2.** Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.

Models with a compact spare tyre

**3.** Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

Models with a full-size spare tyre

**3.** Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

All models

**4.** Securely put the jack, wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool case.

**5.** Store the case in the boot.

Storing the Flat Tyre

**⚠WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with deflation warning system

## ■ Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

**Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 437

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 614

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

| Starter condition | Checklist |
|---|---|
| **Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.**<br>The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | **Check for a message on the driver information interface.**<br>• If the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears.<br>➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 610 |
| | **Check the brightness of the interior lights.**<br>Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.<br>• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all<br>➡ **Battery** P. 581<br>• If the interior lights come on normally<br>➡ **Fuses** P. 627<br>➡ **Emergency Engine Start** P. 612 |

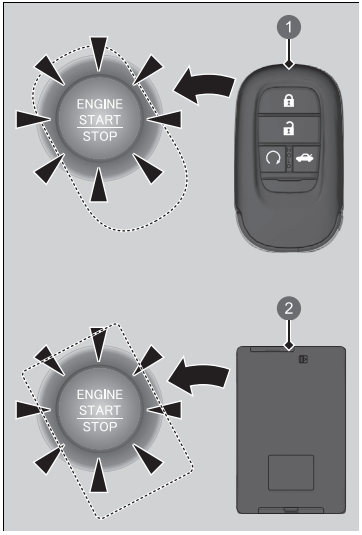


 * Not available on all models

| Starter condition | Checklist |
|---|---|
| **The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.**<br>There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | **Review the engine start procedure.**<br>Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.<br>➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 413 |
| | **Check the immobilizer system indicator.**<br>When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.<br>➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 185 |
| | **Check the fuel level.**<br>There should be enough fuel in the tank.<br>➡ **Fuel Gauge** P. 113 |
| | **Check the fuses.**<br>Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 636 |
| | **If the problem continues:**<br>➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 639 |

# If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:

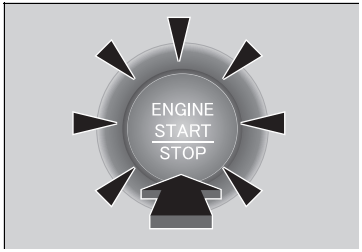



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote or card key* while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote or card key* should be facing you.
   ▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.

❶ Keyless Remote
❷ Card Key*



 * Not available on all models




**2.** Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

## Emergency Engine Start

If the engine does not start using the normal engine starting procedure, you may be able to start it using the emergency start procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

**1.** Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
**2.** Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
**3.** Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to start the engine using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

# Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

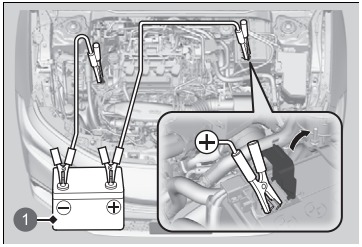
The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.




1 Booster Battery

**1.** Open the cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.
**2.** Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
**3.** Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

**4.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

If the Battery Is Dead

**⚠WARNING**

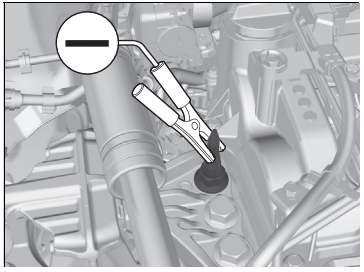
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



**5.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
**6.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
**7.** Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

If the Battery Is Dead

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

*Continued*

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

**1.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
**2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
**3.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
**4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

If the Battery Is Dead

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF**, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.





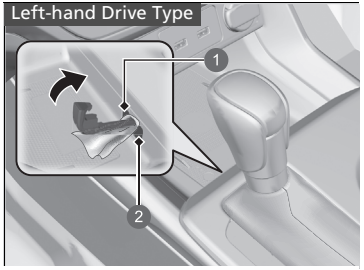
* Not available on all models

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

## Releasing the Lock

Left-hand Drive Type



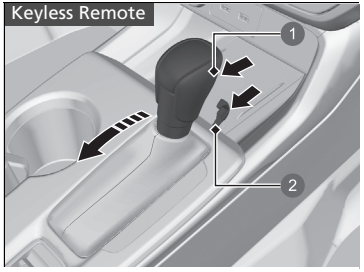

1. Shift Lock Release Slot
2. Cover

**1.** Set the parking brake.
**2.** Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote or card key*.

Left-hand Drive Type

**3.** Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

Keyless Remote



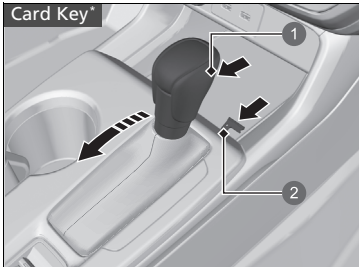

1. Release Button
2. Shift Lock Release Slot

All models

**4.** Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
**5.** While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*




1 Release Button
2 Shift Lock Release Slot



 * Not available on all models

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

Models with B-type meter

- The temperature gauge pointer is at upper level or the engine suddenly loses power.

All models

- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

**1.** Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

**2.** Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

**⚠WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Models with B-type meter

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at upper level may damage the engine.

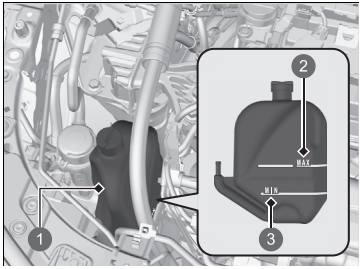
All models

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.



*Continued*

## ■ Next thing to do




❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the driver information interface.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

**⚠WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears




■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

**1.** Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

**2.** If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

**1.** Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

**2.** Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

**Oil Check** P. 555

**3.** Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

# If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On**
P. 624

# If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On


(Red)


(Amber)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 511

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving
  Put the transmission into P.

- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

# If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

# If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

**Deflation Warning System*** P. 437

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.



 * Not available on all models

## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

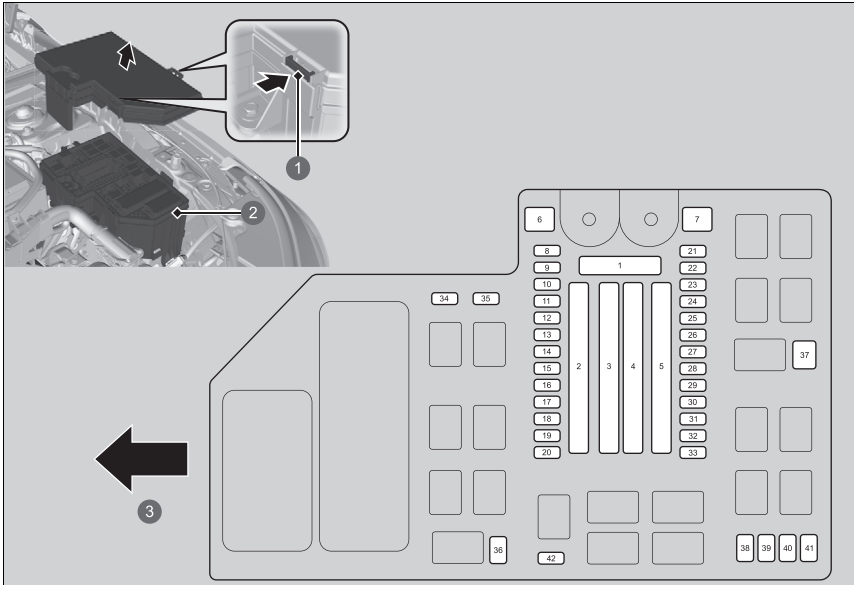


*Continued*

## ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Models without fuse number-stamped on the cover

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.




❶ Tabs
❷ Fuse Box
❸ Front

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Battery | 125 A |
| | – | – |
| | – | – |
| | Fuse Box Option | 60 A |
| 2 | – | – |
| | Fuse Box Option 2 | 40 A |
| | – | – |
| | Fuse Box Main | 60 A |
| | – | – |
| | – | – |
| | – | – |
| 3 | Rear Demister | 40 A |
| | – | – |
| | Blower Motor | 40 A |
| | – | – |
| | – | – |
| | ABS/VSA Motor | 40 A |
| | – | – |
| 4 | – | – |
| | IG Main | 30 A |
| | – | – |
| | Relay Module 2 | 30 A |
| | ST Magnetic Switch | 30 A |
| | Front Wiper Motor | 30 A |
| | EPS | 70 A |
| 5 | Relay Module 1 | 30 A |
| | ABS/VSA FSR | 40 A |
| | Main Fan Motor | 30 A |
| | Fuse Box Main 2 | 40 A |
| 6 | Sub Fan Motor | 30 A |
| 7 | IG Main 2 | 30 A |
| 8 | – | – |
| 9 | – | – |
| 10 | Audio Sub* | 7.5 A |
| 11 | – | – |
| 12 | – | – |
| 13 | – | – |
| 14 | – | – |
| 15 | Front Fog Lights | 10 A |
| 16 | MG Clutch | 10 A |
| 17 | Washer Motor | 15 A |
| 18 | Horn | 10 A |
| 19 | Back Up | 15 A |
| 20 | Audio | 15 A |
| 21 | – | – |
| 22 | DBW | 15 A |
| 23 | – | – |
| 24 | Back Up FI-ECU | 10 A |
| 25 | IGP | 15 A |

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 26 | Transmission | 15 A |
| 27 | Left Headlight | 15 A |
| 28 | Injector | 15 A |
| 29 | Stop lights | 10 A |
| 30 | Right Headlight | 15 A |
| 31 | IG Coil | 15 A |
| 32 | – | – |
| 33 | Hazard | 15 A |
| 34 | – | – |
| 35 | – | – |
| 36 | – | – |
| 37 | – | – |
| 38 | – | – |
| 39 | – | – |
| 40 | VB ACT | 10 A |
| 41 | IGPS (LAF) | 10 A |
| 42 | IG1 Monitor 2 | 7.5 A |

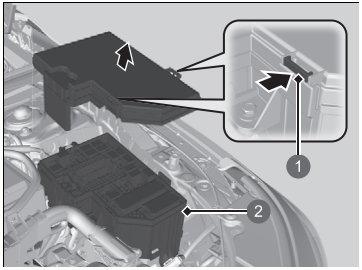
* Not available on all models



*Continued*

Models with fuse number-stamped on the cover

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.




❶ Tab
❷ Fuse Box

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

| | | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | Battery | 125 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | | Fuse Box Option | 60 A |
| 2 | – | – | 40 A |
| | | Fuse Box Option 2 | 40 A |
| | | – | (30 A) |
| | | Fuse Box Main | 60 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| 3 | | Rear Demister | 40 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | | Blower Motor | 40 A |
| | – | – | 40 A |
| | – | – | 30 A |
| | | ABS/VSA Motor | 40 A |
| | | – | (30 A) |
| 4 | – | – | 30 A |
| | | IG Main | 30 A |
| | – | – | 30 A |
| | | Relay Module 2 | 30 A |

| | | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ST Magnetic Switch | 30 A |
| | | Front Wiper Motor | 30 A |
| | | EPS | 70 A |
| 5 | | Relay Module 1 | 30 A |
| | | ABS/VSA FSR | 40 A |
| | | Main Fan Motor | 30 A |
| | | Fuse Box Main 2 | 40 A |
| 6 | | Sub Fan Motor | 30 A |
| 7 | | IG Main 2 | 30 A |
| 8 | – | – | – |
| 9 | | Electrical Vacuum Pump* | (30 A) |
| 10 | | Audio Sub* | (7.5 A) |
| 11 | – | – | – |
| 12 | – | – | – |
| 13 | | – | (10 A) |
| 14 | – | – | – |
| 15 | | Front Fog Lights* | (10 A) |
| 16 | | MG Clutch | 10 A |
| 17 | | Washer Motor | 15 A |
| 18 | | Horn | 10 A |
| 19 | | Back Up | 15 A |
| 20 | | Audio* | (15 A) |
| 21 | – | – | – |
| 22 | | DBW | 15 A |
| 23 | | – | (20 A) |

| | | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|---|
| 24 | | Back Up FI-ECU | 10 A |
| 25 | | IGP | 15 A |
| 26 | | Transmission | (15 A) |
| 27 | | Left Headlight | (15 A) |
| 28 | | Injector | (15 A) |
| 29 | | Stop lights | 10 A |
| 30 | | Right Headlight | (15 A) |
| 31 | | IG Coil | 15 A |
| 32 | – | – | – |
| 33 | | Hazard | 15 A |
| 34 | | – | (7.5 A) |
| 35 | – | – | – |
| 36 | | – | (30 A) |
| 37 | | – | (30 A) |
| 38 | – | – | – |
| 39 | – | – | – |
| 40 | | VB ACT | (10 A) |
| 41 | | IGPS (LAF) | 10 A |
| 42 | | IG1 Monitor 2 | 7.5 A |

* Not available on all models



*Continued*

## ■ Interior Fuse Box

Models without fuse label

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.




1 Fuse Box

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Driver's Power Window | 20 A |
| 2 | Front Passenger's Power Window | 20 A |
| 3 | Rear Right Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 4 | Rear Left Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 5 | Option | 10 A |
| 6 | SRS | 10 A |
| 7 | Boot Lid Lock Actuator | 10 A |
| 8 | – | – |
| 9 | Front Accessory Power Socket | 20 A |
| 10 | Door Lock | 20 A |
| 11 | Meter | 10 A |
| 12 | – | – |
| 13 | – | – |
| 14 | Option 6 (VB SOL) | 10 A |
| 15 | Driver's Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 16 | Sunroof* | 20 A |
| 17 | – | – |
| 18 | – | – |
| 19 | – | – |
| 20 | – | – |
| 21 | – | – |
| 22 | SMART | 10 A |
| 23 | Driver's Door Lock | 10 A |
| 24 | – | – |
| 25 | IMG | 10 A |
| 26 | SRS | 10 A |
| 27 | – | – |
| 28 | Option 5 | 10 A |
| 29 | Fuel Pump | 15 A |
| 30 | Left Side Rear Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 31 | Right Side Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 32 | – | – |
| 33 | – | – |
| 34 | – | – |
| 35 | – | – |
| 36 | – | – |
| 37 | – | – |
| 38 | – | – |
| 39 | Right Side Rear Door Lock | 10 A |
| 40 | Driver's Power Seat Reclining | 20 A |
| 41 | Driver's Power Seat Sliding | 20 A |
| 42 | – | – |
| 43 | A/C | 10 A |
| 44 | Daytime Running Lights | 10 A |
| 45 | ACC | 10 A |
| 46 | ACC Key Lock | 10 A |
| 47 | Left Side Door Lock | 10 A |
| 48 | Front Seat Heater | 20 A |
| 49 | – | – |
| 50 | – | – |
| 51 | – | – |
| 52 | – | – |
| 53 | – | – |
| 54 | Option 1 | 10 A |
| 55 | Audio AMP* | 30 A |
| 56 | – | – |

* Not available on all models

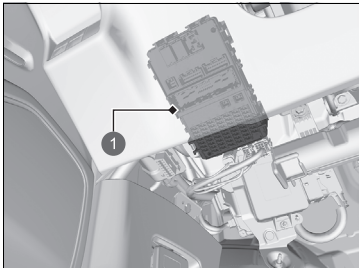


*Continued*

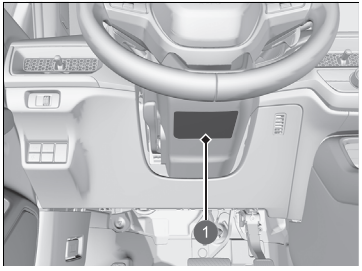
Models with fuse label

Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Left-hand Drive Type

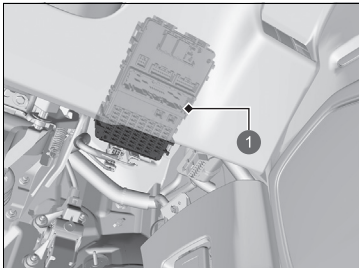



1 Fuse Box

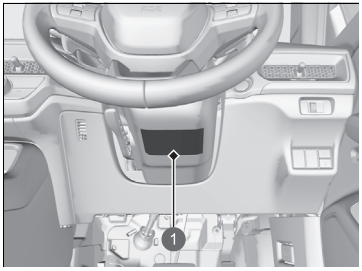



1 Fuse Label

Right-hand drive models




1 Fuse Box



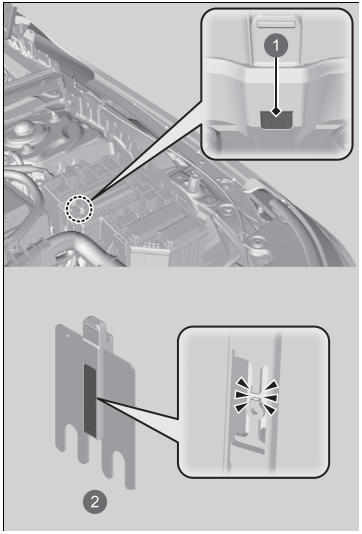

1 Fuse Label

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Driver's Power Window | 20 A |
| 2 | Front Passenger's Power Window | 20 A |
| 3 | Rear Right Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 4 | Rear Left Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 5 | Option | 10 A |
| 6 | SRS | 10 A |
| 7 | Boot Lid Lock Actuator | 10 A |
| 8 | – | – |
| 9 | Front Accessory Power Socket | 20 A |
| 10 | Door Lock | 20 A |
| 11 | Meter | 10 A |
| 12 | – | 10 A |
| 13 | – | (10 A) |
| 14 | Option 6 (VB SOL) | 10 A |
| 15 | Driver's Door Unlock* | (10 A) |
| 16 | Sunroof* | (20 A) |
| 17 | – | (10 A) |
| 18 | – | – |
| 19 | – | – |
| 20 | – | (10 A) |
| 21 | – | (20 A) |
| 22 | SMART | 10 A |
| 23 | Driver's Door Lock* | (10 A) |
| 24 | – | (7.5 A) |
| 25 | IMG | 10 A |
| 26 | SRS | 10 A |
| 27 | – | 20 A |
| 28 | Option 5 | 10 A |
| 29 | Fuel Pump | 15 A |
| 30 | Left Side Rear Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 31 | Right Side Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 32 | – | – |
| 33 | – | – |
| 34 | – | – |
| 35 | – | – |
| 36 | – | (20 A) |
| 37 | – | (15 A) |
| 38 | – | – |
| 39 | Right Side Rear Door Lock | 10 A |
| 40 | Driver's Power Seat Reclining* | (20 A) |
| 41 | Driver's Power Seat Sliding* | (20 A) |
| 42 | Option 3* | (10 A) |
| 43 | A/C | 10 A |
| 44 | Daytime Running Lights | 10 A |
| 45 | ACC | 10 A |
| 46 | ACC Key Lock | 10 A |
| 47 | Passenger Side Door Lock | 10 A |
| 48 | – | 20 A |
| 49 | Passenger's Power Seat Reclining* | (20 A) |
| 50 | – | (10 A) |
| 51 | – | (10 A) |
| 52 | – | (20 A) |
| 53 | Passenger's Power Seat Sliding* | (20 A) |
| 54 | Option 1 | 10 A |
| 55 | Audio AMP* | (30 A) |
| 56 | – | (30 A) |

* Not available on all models

# Inspecting and Changing Fuses




1. Hole
2. Main Fuse

**1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
**2.** Remove the fuse box cover.
**3.** Check the main fuse in the engine compartment fuse box.
▶ Look the fuse through the hole.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

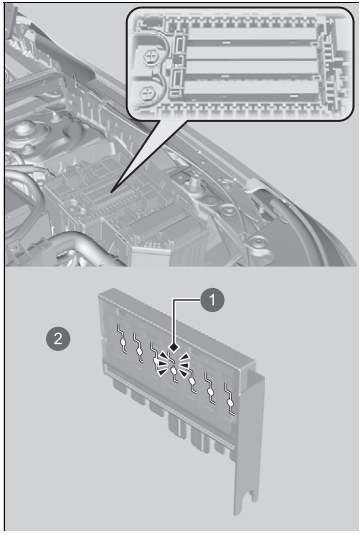
Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Models with fuse label
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Models without fuse label
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.
**Fuse Locations** P. 627

All models
Replace fuses with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

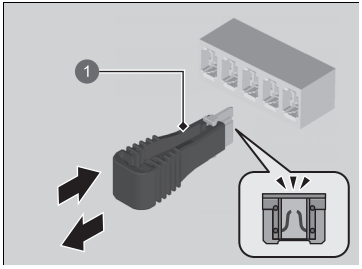



❶ Blown Fuse
❷ Combined Fuse

**4.** Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
▶ Look into the space between the fuses.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



*Continued*




1 Fuse Puller

**5.** Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

# Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

### ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

### ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

**Parking Brake** P. 511

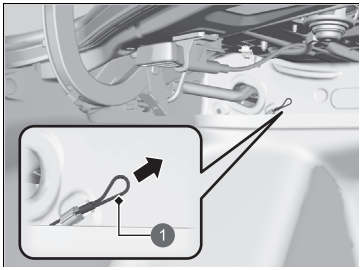
NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

## What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.




1. Open the boot.
2. Pull the release cord toward you.
   ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.
3. Open the fuel fill door.
   **How to Refuel** P. 531

1 Release Cord

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

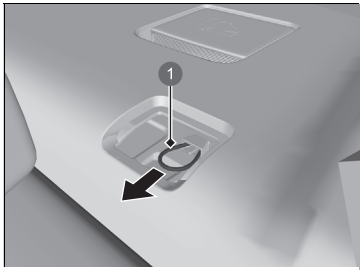
## What to Do If Unable to Open the Boot

If you cannot open the boot, use the following procedure.




❶ Cover
❷ Keyless Remote
❸ Card Key*

**1.** Remove the cover with a key.
▶ Wrap a key with a cloth to prevent scratching the cover.




❶ Cord

**2.** Pull the release cord.
**3.** Replace the cover.

* Not available on all models

What to Do If Unable to Open the Boot

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

**Specifications** ..... 644
**Identification Numbers**
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number ..... 647
**Devices that Emit Radio Waves*** ..... 648
**TCU Open Source Licence***
Free/Open Source Software Information .... 656
**Open Source Licence**
Meter Open Source Licence ..... 657

* Not available on all models

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

| Model | Civic | |
|---|---|---|
| Curb Weight | 1342 kg*1<br>1328 - 1348 kg*2<br>1312 - 1334 kg*3<br>1284 kg*4<br>1306 - 1338 kg*5<br>1304 - 1337 kg*6<br>1300 - 1336 kg*7<br>1334 - 1358 kg*8 | |
| Maximum Permissible Weight | See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2<br>1760 kg*1, *5, *7, *8<br>1740 kg*3<br>1710 kg*4<br>1750 kg*6 | |
| Maximum Permissible Axle Weight | See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2 | |
| | Front | 960 kg*1, *5, *6, *7, *8<br>950 kg*3<br>920 kg*4 |
| | Rear | 810 kg*1, *5, *6, *7, *8<br>800 kg*3, *4 |

*1: Indonesian models
*2: African models
*3: Thai models
*4: Singaporean models
*5: Vietnamese models
*6: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*7: Bruneian, Bangladeshi, Bhutanese, Nepalese, Sri Lankan and Latin American models
*8: Malaysian models

## ■ Engine Specifications

| Type | Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC | |
|---|---|---|
| Bore x Stroke | 73 × 89.5 mm | |
| Displacement | 1498 $cm^3$ | |
| Compression Ratio | 10.3 : 1 | |
| Spark Plugs | NGK | DILKAR8P8DY*1<br>DILKAR8P8SY*2 |

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

## ■ Fuel

| Fuel: Type | • Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher*1<br>• Unleaded petrol, research octane number of 91 or higher*2 |
|---|---|
| Fuel Tank Capacity | 47 L |

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

## ■ Battery

| Capacity | 48AH(5)/60AH(20) |
|---|---|

## ■ Washer Fluid

| Tank Capacity | 1.5 L |
|---|---|

## ■ Light Bulbs

| | |
|---|---|
| Headlights (Low Beam) | 55W (H11)* LED* |
| Headlights (High Beam) | 60W (HB3)* LED* |
| Fog Lights* | LED |
| Position/Daytime Running Lights | LED |
| Front Turn Signal Lights | 21 W (Amber)* LED* |
| Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors) | LED |
| Brake Lights | LED |
| Taillights | LED |
| Rear Turn Signal Lights | 21 W (Amber) |
| Back-Up Lights | 16 W |
| High-Mount Brake Light | 21W* LED* |
| Rear Licence Plate Light | LED |
| Interior Lights | |
| Map lights | LED |
| Ceiling Light | LED |
| Front Ambient Lights* | LED |
| Foot Light* | LED |
| Vanity Mirror Lights* | 2W |
| Centre Console Light* | LED |
| Glove Box Light* | LED |
| Boot Light | 5W |

## ■ Brake Fluid

| | |
|---|---|
| Specified | Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4 |

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Specified | Honda HCF-2 | |
| Capacity | Change | 2.7 L*1<br>3.7 L*2 |

*1: Singaporean models
*2: Except Singaporean models

## ■ Engine Oil

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Recommended | Singaporean models<br>Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20<br>ACEA C2/C3/C5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30<br>Thai models<br>Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0<br>ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30<br>Except Singaporean and Thai models<br>Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30<br>API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 | |
| Capacity | Change | 3.2 L |
| | Change including filter | 3.5 L |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Engine Coolant

| | |
|---|---|
| Specified | Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2 |
| Ratio | 50/50 with distilled water |
| Capacity | 5.71 L*1 (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank)<br>5.53 L*2 (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank)<br>5.72 L*3 (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank)<br>5.83 L*4 (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank) |

*1: Right-hand drive models with heater except Singaporean models
*2: Right-hand drive models without heater
*3: Left-hand drive models
*4: Singaporean models

## ■ Tyre

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Regular | Size | 215/55R16 93H<br>215/50R17 91V<br>235/40ZR18 95Y |
| | Pressure | See the label on driver's doorjamb |
| Compact Spare* | Size | T125/80D16 97M<br>T125/85D16 99M |
| | Pressure | See the label on driver's doorjamb |
| Spare* (Full-size tyre) | Size | 215/55R16 93H<br>215/50R17 91V |
| | Pressure | Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb |
| Wheel Size | Regular | 16X7J<br>17X7J<br>18X8J |
| | Compact Spare* | 16X4T |
| | Spare* (Full-size tyre) | 16X7J<br>17X7J |

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

## ■ Brake

| | |
|---|---|
| Type | Power assisted |
| Front | Ventilated disc |
| Rear | Solid disc |
| Parking | Electric parking brake system |

## ■ Air Conditioning

| | |
|---|---|
| Refrigerant Type | HFC-134a (R-134a) |
| Charge Quantity | 445 - 495 g*1<br>435 - 485 g*2 |

*1: Right-hand drive models
*2: Left-hand drive models

## ■ Vehicle Dimensions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Length | | 4678 mm*1, *2, *3, *4, *10, *13<br>4677 mm*5 |
| Width | | 1802 mm*1, *2, *3, *4, *5, *10, *13 |
| Height | | 1415 mm*1, *2, *3, *4, *5, *10, *13 |
| Wheelbase | | 2735 mm*1, *3, *4, *13<br>2733 mm*2, *5, *10 |
| Track | Front | 1547 mm*1, *2, *3, *6, *7, *11, *14<br>1537 mm*8, *9, *12, *15 |
| | Rear | 1575 mm*1, *3, *6, *14<br>1587 mm*2, *7, *11<br>1565 mm*8, *15<br>1577 mm*9, *12 |

*1: Indonesian models
*2: Thai models
*3: Singaporean models
*4: Vietnamese models
*5: African models
*6: Vietnamese models with 16 inch wheel or 17 inch wheel
*7: African models with 17 inch wheel
*8: Vietnamese models with 18 inch wheel
*9: African models with 18 inch wheel
*10: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*11: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models with 16 inch wheel or 17 inch wheel
*12: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models with 18 inch wheel
*13: Malaysian models
*14: Malaysian models with 16 inch wheel or 17 inch wheel
*15: Malaysian models with 18 inch wheel

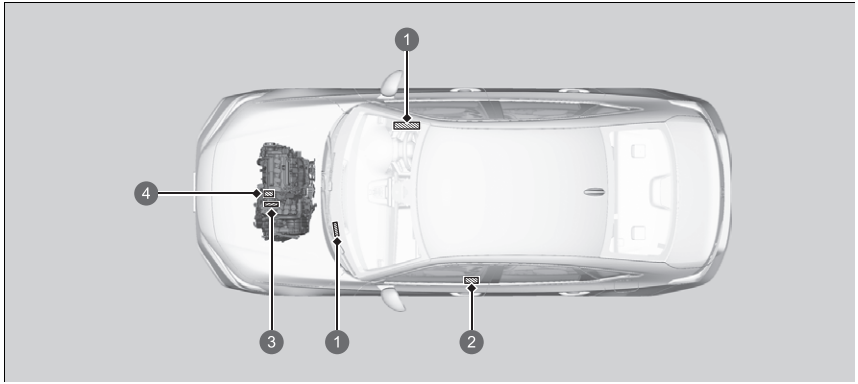




* Not available on all models

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

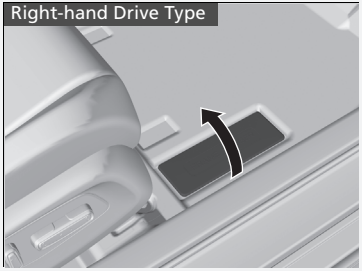



1. Vehicle Identification Number*
2. Certification Label*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Certification Plate*/Chassis Number*/Engine Number*
3. Continuously Variable Transmission Number
4. Engine Number

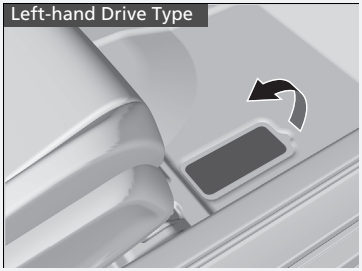
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

Right-hand Drive Type



Left-hand Drive Type



* Not available on all models

# Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Botswanan models

| Keyless Access System | | | Hands-Free Telephone System (Models with Display Audio) |
|---|---|---|---|
| BCM | FOB | Card Key* | |
| BOCRA<br>REGISTERED NO :<br>BOCRA/TA/2020/5766 | BOCRA<br>REGISTERED NO :<br>BOCRA/TA/2020/5502 | BOCRA<br>REGISTERED NO :<br>BOCRA/TA/2020/5664 | BOCRA<br>BOCRA/TA/2020/5231 |

Indonesian models

| Keyless Access System<br>Card Key |
|---|
| The web-address of QR Code is: :https://<br>sertifikasi.postel.go.id/valid?<br>section=0d153544317d014415cc5335b18<br>ec1d5S3r95668S3rfc385fdbaf8ac136f37b6<br>592461fdf5c |





* Not available on all models

Philippine models

| Keyless Access System* | |
|---|---|
| BCM | FOB |
| No.ESD-RCE-2023291 | No.ESD-RCE-2022596C |
| NTC Type Accepted | NTC Type Accepted |

Singaporean models

| Keyless Access System | | Hands-Free Telephone System (Models with Display Audio) |
|---|---|---|
| BCM | FOB | |
| Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440 | Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440 | Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787 |

South African models

| Hands-Free Telephone System (Models with Display Audio) |
|---|
| TA-2020/5444 ICASA APPROVED |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Antiguan and Barbudan, Bahamian, Surinamese and Swaziland models

| Keyless Access System | | |
|---|---|---|
| BCM | FOB | Card Key* |
| This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.<br>Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. | This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.<br>Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. | This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.<br>Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. |



 * Not available on all models

Thai models

| Keyless Access System | | |
|---|---|---|
| BCM | FOB | Card Key* |
|  |  |  |









* Not available on all models

Thai models

TCU*



CLASS B
NTC ID. B38014-19-0322

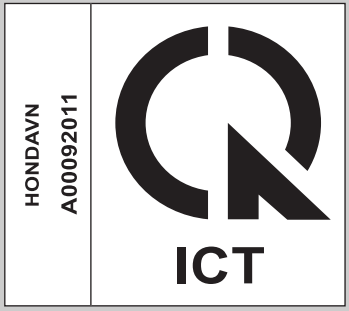
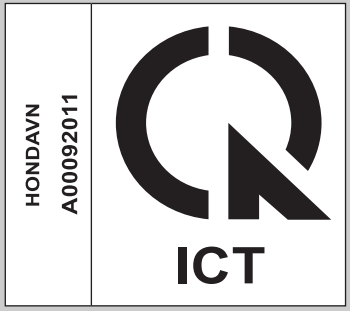
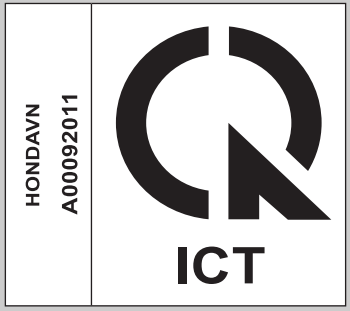
This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC).

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.



 * Not available on all models

Vietnamese models

| Keyless Access System* | | Telematics Unit* |
|---|---|---|
| BCM | FOB | |
|  |  |  |



Jamaican models

| Keyless Access System | |
|---|---|
| BCM | FOB |
| This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - "41580430" on the product | This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - "TP_4 " on the product |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## Bermudian and Grand Caymanian models

### Keyless Access System
### BCM

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

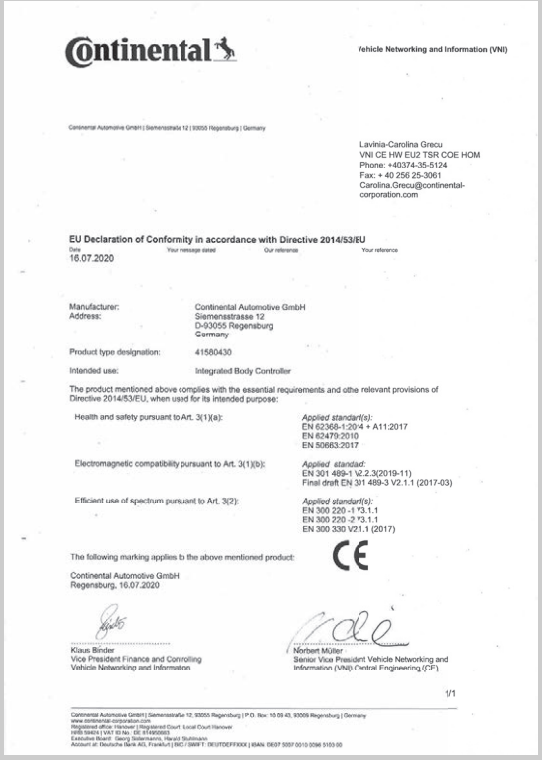
Short range device for remote control

- Frequency band: 125KHz

- Maximum transmitted output: 10mW

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300
Aalst - Belgium



Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Lavinia-Carolina Grecu
VNI CE HW EU2 TSR COE HOM
Phone: +40374-35-5124
Fax: + 40 256 25-3061
Carolina.Grecu@continental-corporation.com

**EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU**

Date 16.07.2020 | Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: 41580430

Intended use: Integrated Body Controller

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and othe relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose:

| | |
|---|---|
| Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): | *Applied standard(s):* EN 62368-1:2014 + A11:2017 EN 62479:2010 EN 50663:2017 |
| Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): | *Applied standad:* EN 301 489-1 V2.2.3(2019-11) Final draft EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (2017-03) |
| Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): | *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1 V3.1.1 EN 300 220 -2 V3.1.1 EN 300 330 V21.1 (2017) |

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 16.07.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Vehicle Networking and Information

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI) Central Engineering (CE)

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43, 93055 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Local Court Hanover
HRB 59404 | VAT ID No.: DE 814900883
Executive Board: Georg Sistermann, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

## Bermudian and Grand Caymanian models

### Keyless Access System
### FOB

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Short range device for remote control

- Frequency band: 433.92MHz

- Maximum transmitted output: 1mW

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300
Aalst - Belgium



Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Morar Petre Bogdan
VNI CE HW EU2 TSR COE HOM
Phone: + 40 374- 35-5511
Fax: + 40 374- 35-3001
petre-bogdan.morar@continental-corporation.com

| Date | Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference |
|---|---|---|---|
| 15.05.2020 | | | |

**EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU**

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | Continental Automotive GmbH |
| Address: | Siemensstrasse 12<br>D-93055 Regensburg<br>Germany |
| Product type designation: | TP_4 |
| Intended use: | Radio Frequency Transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking system |

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose:

| | |
|---|---|
| Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 62368-1:2014+A11:2017<br>EN 62479:2010<br>EN 50663:2017 |
| Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): | *Applied standard(s):*<br>DRAFT EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1(2019-03) |
| Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 300 220 -1: V3.1.1<br>EN 300 220 -2: V3.1.1<br>EN 300 330 -V2.1.1 2017-02 |

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 19.05.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information(VNI)

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43, 93009 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Local Court Hanover
HRB 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 814960063
Executive Board: Georg Stoltmann, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

## Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
*https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/*



 * Not available on all models

## Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
*https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/business_ic_meter/*

## Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ..... 428

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 518
Accessories and Modifications ..... 595
Accessory Power Sockets ..... 232
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 107, 460
Adding
  Coolant ..... 557
  Engine Oil ..... 556
  Washer ..... 562
Additives, Engine Oil ..... 553
Adjusting
  Armrest ..... 224
  Clock ..... 166
  Front Seats ..... 216
  Head Restraints ..... 222
  Headlights ..... 201
  Mirrors ..... 211
  Rear Seats ..... 219
  Sound ..... 252, 323
  Steering Wheel ..... 210
Agile Handling Assist ..... 436
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) ..... 238
  Changing the Mode ..... 240
  Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 241
  Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 587
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 240
  Sensor ..... 243
  Synchronization Mode ..... 242
  Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 238
Air Pressure ..... 575, 646
Airbags ..... 52
  After a Collision ..... 54
  Airbag Care ..... 63
  Event Data Recorder ..... 1
  Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 54
  Indicator ..... 62, 100
  Sensors ..... 52
  Side Airbags ..... 57
  Side Curtain Airbags ..... 60
AM/FM Radio ..... 254, 330
Android Auto ..... 272, 352
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 518
  Indicator ..... 100
Apple CarPlay ..... 268, 346
Armrest ..... 224
Audio Remote Controls ..... 251, 308
Audio System ..... 246
  Adjusting the Sound ..... 252, 323
  App Shortcut Function ..... 313
  Audio System Function ..... 249, 305
  Basic Operation ..... 249, 305
  Clock Setup ..... 320
  Display Setup ..... 253, 324
  Error Messages ..... 394
  General Information ..... 396
  How to Update ..... 325
  How to Update Wirelessly ..... 328
  How to Update with a USB Device ..... 329
  iPod ..... 256, 335
  Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 286, 319, 376
  MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 259, 338
  On-Board Owner's Manual ..... 311
  Radio Data System (RDS) ..... 333
  Reactivating ..... 248
  Security Code ..... 248
  Selecting an Audio Source ..... 318
  Start Up ..... 304
  Status Area ..... 318
  System Updates ..... 325
  System Updates Settings ..... 326
  Theft Protection ..... 248
  USB Flash Drives ..... 338, 397
  USB Port(s) ..... 250, 307
  Wallpaper Setup ..... 321
  Wi-Fi Connection ..... 345
Audio/Information Screen ..... 312
Auto High-Beam ..... 202
  Indicator ..... 103
Automatic Brake Hold ..... 515
  Indicator ..... 96, 515
Automatic Brake Hold System
  Indicator ..... 96
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function ..... 214
Automatic Intermittent Wipers ..... 206

**Average Fuel Economy** ..... 119, 151
**Average Speed** ..... 122, 154

## B

**Battery**
Charging System Indicator ..... 97, 622
If the Battery Is Dead ..... 614
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) ..... 581
Maintenance (Replacing) ..... 584
**Belts (Seat)** ..... 40
**Beverage Holders** ..... 229
***Bluetooth*® Audio** ..... 262, 342
**Booster Seats (For Children)** ..... 87
**Boot** ..... 183
Lid ..... 183
Light Bulb ..... 572, 645
Unable to Open ..... 641
**Brake System** ..... 511
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 518
Automatic Brake Hold ..... 515
Brake Assist System ..... 519
Fluid ..... 561
Foot Brake ..... 514
Indicator (Amber) ..... 96, 624
Indicator (Red) ..... 94, 95, 623, 624
Parking Brake ..... 511
**Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)** ..... 208, 209
**Bulb Replacement** ..... 563
Boot Light ..... 572
Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Lights ..... 567
Fog Lights ..... 566
Front Turn Signal Lights ..... 565
Headlights ..... 563
High-Mount Brake Light ..... 570
Position/Daytime Running Lights ..... 566
Rear License Plate Light ..... 570
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights ..... 566
Taillight and Back-Up Light ..... 569
Vanity Mirror Light ..... 571
**Bulb Specifications** ..... 645

## C

**Carbon Monoxide Gas** ..... 89
**Carrying Luggage** ..... 409, 411
**Certification Label** ..... 647
**Changing Bulbs** ..... 563
**Charging System Indicator** ..... 97, 622
**Child Restraint System** ..... 64
Booster Seats ..... 87
Child Restraint System for Infants ..... 67
Child Restraint System for Small Children ..... 69
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ..... 82
Larger Children ..... 86
Rear-facing Child Restraint System ..... 67
Selecting a Child Restraint System ..... 70
Using a Tether ..... 84
**Child Safety** ..... 64
Childproof Door Locks ..... 181
**Childproof Door Locks** ..... 181
**Cleaning the Exterior** ..... 592
**Cleaning the Interior** ..... 589
**Climate Control System** ..... 238
Changing the Mode ..... 238
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 241
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 587
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 240
Sensors ..... 243
Synchronization Mode ..... 242
Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 238
**Clock** ..... 166
**CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)** ..... 447
**Coat Hook** ..... 230
**Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** ..... 447
**Colour Audio** ..... 249
**Compact Spare Tyre** ..... 599
**Console Compartment** ..... 228
**Continuously Variable Transmission**
Creeping ..... 421
Fluid ..... 560
Kickdown ..... 421
Operating the Shift Lever ..... 25, 423, 426

Shift Lever Does Not Move ..... 617
Shifting ..... 422, 425
Controls ..... 165
Coolant (Engine)
Adding the Coolant ..... 557
Overheating ..... 619
Customized Features ..... 131, 276, 356, 364

## D

Daytime Running Lights ..... 200
Dead Battery ..... 614
Defaulting All the Settings ..... 283, 372
Deflation Warning System ..... 437
Indicator ..... 102, 626
Initialisation ..... 437
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 241
Demister ..... 207
Devices that Emit Radio Waves ..... 648
Dimming
Headlights ..... 196
Rearview Mirror ..... 211, 212
Dipstick (Engine Oil) ..... 555
Display Audio System ..... 304
Display Setup ..... 253, 324
Door Mirrors ..... 213
Doors ..... 167
Auto Door Locking ..... 182
Auto Door Unlocking ..... 182
Door and Boot Open Message ..... 39
Keys ..... 167
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ..... 179
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..... 171
Lockout Prevention System ..... 178
Drive Mode Switch ..... 431
Driver Attention Monitor ..... 124, 156
Driver Information Interface ... 115, 143, 146
Switching the Display ..... 115, 146
Driving ..... 407
Braking ..... 511
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 421
Shifting Position ..... 422, 425
Starting the Engine ..... 413
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 587

## E

ECON Button ..... 430
Elapsed Time ..... 122, 154
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator ..... 101, 625
Emergency Engine Start ..... 612
Emergency Engine Stop ..... 613
Emergency Stop Signal ..... 520
Emergency Towing ..... 639
Engine
If the Battery Is Dead ..... 614
Number ..... 647
Oil ..... 553
Starting ..... 413
Engine Coolant
Adding the Coolant ..... 557
Overheating ..... 619
Temperature Gauge ..... 113
Engine Oil ..... 553
Adding ..... 556
Checking ..... 555
Low Oil Pressure Warning ..... 621
Recommended Engine Oil ..... 553
ENGINE START/STOP Button ..... 193
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System ..... 625
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) ..... 89
Exterior Care (Cleaning) ..... 592
Exterior Mirrors ..... 213

## F

Features ..... 245
Filter
Dust and Pollen ..... 587
Flat Tyre ..... 599
Floor Mats ..... 590
Fluids
Brake ..... 561
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 560
Engine Coolant ..... 557
Windscreen Washer ..... 562
FM/AM Radio ..... 254, 330
Fog Light Indicator ..... 103

Folding Down the Rear Seats ..... 219
Foot Brake ..... 514
Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 54
Front Seat Heaters ..... 237
Front Seats ..... 215
  Adjusting ..... 216
Front Wide View Camera ..... 509
Fuel ..... 27, 530
  Average Fuel Economy ..... 119, 151
  Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions ..... 533
  Gauge ..... 113
  Instant Fuel Economy ..... 119, 151
  Low Fuel Indicator ..... 100
  Range ..... 119, 151
  Recommendation ..... 530
  Refueling ..... 530
Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions ..... 533
Fuel Fill Cap ..... 27, 531
Fuel Fill Door ..... 27, 531
Fuses ..... 627
  Inspecting and Changing ..... 636
  Locations ..... 628, 632

## G

Gauges ..... 112
Glass (care) ..... 590, 593
Glove Box ..... 227

## H

Halogen Bulbs ..... 563
Hands-Free Telephone System ..... 284, 373
  Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls ..... 296, 383
  Automatic Transferring ..... 294, 384
  Favorite Contacts ..... 297, 385
  HFT Buttons ..... 284, 373
  HFT Menus ..... 287, 377
  HFT Status Display ..... 286, 375
  Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 286, 376
  Making a Call ..... 299, 389
  Options During a Call ..... 303, 392
  Phone Settings Screen ..... 379
  Phone Setup ..... 289, 380
  Receiving a Call ..... 302, 391
  Ring Tone ..... 294, 384
Hazard Warning Button ..... 6, 7
Head Restraints ..... 222
Headlights ..... 196
  Adjuster ..... 201
  Aiming ..... 563
  Auto High-Beam ..... 202
  Dimming ..... 196
  Operating ..... 196
Heated Door Mirror Button ..... 207
Heaters (Front Seat) ..... 237
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) ..... 284, 373
High Beam Indicator ..... 103
Hill Start Assist System ..... 418
Honda Sensing ..... 28, 444

## I

Identification Numbers ..... 647
  Engine and Transmission ..... 647
  Vehicle Identification ..... 647
Illumination Control
  Dial ..... 208, 209
Immobilizer System ..... 185
  Indicator ..... 106
Indicators ..... 92
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 107, 460
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval ..... 108
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 100
  Auto High-Beam ..... 103
  Automatic Brake Hold ..... 96, 515
  Automatic Brake Hold System ..... 96, 515
  Charging System ..... 97
  ECON Mode ..... 105, 430, 431
  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System ..... 101
  Fog Light ..... 103
  High Beam ..... 103
  Immobilizer System ..... 106
  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..... 108
  Lights On ..... 103
  Low Fuel ..... 100
  Low Temperature Indicator ..... 105
  Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System ..... 102
  M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift ..... 98

Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 97
NORMAL Mode ..... 105, 431
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) ..... 96, 624
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) ..... 94, 95, 623, 624
Safety Support ..... 109
Seat Belt Reminder ..... 99
Security System Alarm ..... 106
Shift Position ..... 98
SPORT Mode ..... 105, 431
Supplemental Restraint System ..... 100
System Message ..... 104
Transmission System ..... 98
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning ..... 103
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF ..... 101, 435
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..... 101, 434
**Instant Fuel Economy** ..... 119, 151
**Instrument Panel** ..... 91
Brightness Control ..... 208, 209
**Interior Convenience Items** ..... 225
**Interior Lights** ..... 225
**Interior Rearview Mirror** ..... 211, 212
**iPod** ..... 256, 335, 396

## J

**Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)** ..... 603
**Jump Starting** ..... 614

## K

**Key Number Tag** ..... 169
**Keyless Access System** ..... 171
**Keyless Lockout Prevention** ..... 178
**Keys** ..... 167
Lockout Prevention ..... 178
Number Tag ..... 169
Rear Door Won't Open ..... 181
Remote Transmitter ..... 176
**Kickdown** ..... 421

## L

**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** ..... 482
**LaneWatch** ..... 439
**Lead Car Departure Notification System** ..... 504
**Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto** ..... 405
**Lights** ..... 196, 563
Auto High-Beam ..... 202
Bulb Replacement ..... 563
Daytime Running Lights ..... 200
Fog Light ..... 200
High Beam Indicator ..... 103
Interior ..... 225
Light Switches ..... 196
Lights On Indicator ..... 103
**Load Limits** ..... 411
**Locking/Unlocking** ..... 167
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 182
Childproof Door Locks ..... 181
From Inside ..... 179
From Outside ..... 171
Keys ..... 167
Using a Key ..... 177
**Lockout Prevention System** ..... 178
**Low Battery Charge** ..... 622
**Low Fuel Indicator** ..... 100
**Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength** ..... 170
**Low Oil Pressure Warning** ..... 621
**Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator** ..... 626
**Lower Anchorages** ..... 78
**Lubricant Specifications Chart** ..... 645
**Luggage (Load Limit)** ..... 411

## M

**Maintenance** ..... 535
Adding the Coolant ..... 557
Battery ..... 581
Brake Fluid ..... 561
Cleaning ..... 589
Climate Control ..... 587
Coolant ..... 557
Oil ..... 555

Oil Monitor System ..... 539
Precautions ..... 536
Remote Transmitter ..... 584
Replacing Light Bulbs ..... 563
Safety ..... 537
Schedule ..... 546
Transmission Fluid ..... 560
Tyres ..... 575
Under the Bonnet ..... 550
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 97, 622
Map Lights ..... 226
Maximum Permissible Weight ..... 411, 644
Meters, Gauges ..... 112
Mirrors ..... 211
Adjusting ..... 211
Door ..... 213
Interior Rearview ..... 211, 212
Modifications (and Accessories) ..... 595
MP3 ..... 259, 338
Multi-View Rear Camera ..... 528


## N


Navigation ..... 122, 154
Numbers (Identification) ..... 647


## O


Oil (Engine) ..... 553
Adding ..... 556
Checking ..... 555
Low Oil Pressure Warning ..... 621
Recommended Engine Oil ..... 553
Viscosity ..... 553
Oil Monitor System ..... 539
On-Board Owner's Manual ..... 311
Open the Owner's Manual ..... 311
Open Source Licences ..... 400
Opening/Closing
Bonnet ..... 551
Boot ..... 183
Power Windows ..... 187
Sunroof ..... 191
Other Interior Convenience Items ..... 232
Outside Temperature Display ..... 114
Overheating ..... 619


## P


Paddle Shifters
(7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) ..... 428
Parking Brake ..... 511
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
(Amber) ..... 96, 624
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
(Red) ..... 94, 95, 623, 624
Parking Sensor System ..... 523
Passing Indicators ..... 196
Petrol ..... 27, 530
Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions ..... 533
Gauge ..... 113
Information ..... 530
Instant Fuel Economy ..... 119, 151
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 100
Refueling ..... 530
Phone ..... 122
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio ..... 262, 342
Power Windows ..... 187
Precautions While Driving ..... 419
Pregnant Women ..... 49
Puncture (Tyre) ..... 599


## R


Radiator ..... 559
Radio (FM/AM) ..... 254, 330
Radio Data System (RDS) ..... 333
Range ..... 119, 151
RDS (Radio Data System) ..... 333
Rear Demister Button ..... 207
Rear Seats (Folding Down) ..... 219
Rearview Mirror ..... 211, 212
Refueling ..... 530
Fuel Gauge ..... 113
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 100
Petrol ..... 530, 644
Regulations ..... 648
Remote Transmitter ..... 176

Replacement
Battery ... 584
Bulbs ... 563
Fuses ... 627, 628, 632
Tyre ... 577, 599
Wiper Blade Rubber ... 573
Resetting a Trip Meter ... 119, 151
Road Departure Mitigation ... 496
On and Off ... 499

## S

Safe Driving ... 35
Safety Check ... 39
Safety Labels ... 90
Safety Message ... 0
Safety Support ... 129, 161
Seat Belts ... 40
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage ... 48
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners ... 45
Checking ... 50
Fastening ... 46
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ... 82
Pregnant Women ... 49
Reminder ... 43
Warning Indicator ... 43, 99
Seats ... 215
Adjusting ... 215
Front Seat Heaters ... 237
Front Seats ... 215
Rear Seats ... 219
Security System ... 185
Security System Alarm Indicator ... 106
Selecting a Child Restraint System ... 70
Selector Knob (Audio) ... 249
Setting the Clock ... 166
Settings ... 131
Shift Lever ... 25
Operation ... 25
Releasing ... 617
Won't Move ... 617
Shift Position Indicator ... 98, 423, 426
Shifting (Transmission) ... 422, 425
Shoulder Anchorage ... 48
Side Airbags ... 57
Side Curtain Airbags ... 60
Siri Eyes Free ... 266
Spare Tyre ... 599
Spark Plugs ... 644
Specifications ... 644
Specified Fuel ... 530, 644
Speed Alarm ... 123, 155
Speedometer ... 112
SRS Airbags (Airbags) ... 54
Starting the Engine
Does Not Start ... 608
If the Battery Is Dead ... 614
Steering Wheel ... 210
Adjusting ... 210
Stopping ... 521
Storage Items ... 227
Sunroof ... 191
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ... 54
Switches
(Around the Steering Wheel) ... 6, 7, 8, 193
System Message Indicator ... 104
System Updates ... 325

## T

Tachometer ... 112
TCU Open Source Licence ... 656, 657
Temperature
Gauge ... 113
Outside Temperature Display ... 114
Temperature Sensor ... 114, 243
Time (Setting) ... 166
Tools ... 598
Towing a Trailer ... 412
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency ... 639
Transmission ... 421, 422, 425
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ... 428
Creeping ... 421
Fluid ... 560
Kickdown ... 421
Number ... 647
Shift Lever Does Not Move ... 617
Shift Position Indicator ... 98, 423, 426
Trip Meter ... 119, 151

**Troubleshooting** ..... 597
Blown Fuse ..... 627, 628, 632
Brake Pedal Vibrates ..... 31
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door ..... 32
Emergency Towing ..... 639
Engine Won't Start ..... 608
Noise When Braking ..... 33
Overheating ..... 619
Puncture/Flat Tyre ..... 599
Rear Door Won't Open ..... 32, 181
Shift Lever Won't Move ..... 617
Warning Indicators ..... 92
**Turbo Engine Vehicle** ..... 534
**Turn Signals**
Indicators (Instrument Panel) ..... 103
**Tyres** ..... 575
Air Pressure ..... 646
Checking and Maintaining ..... 575
Inspection ..... 575
Puncture (Flat Tyre) ..... 599
Rotation ..... 578
Spare Tyre ..... 599
Tyre Chains ..... 580
Wear Indicators ..... 576
Winter ..... 580

## U

**Unlocking the Doors** ..... 171
**USB Flash Drives** ..... 259, 338, 397
**USB Port(s)** ..... 250, 307

## V

**Vanity Mirrors** ..... 11
**Vehicle Identification Numbers** ..... 647
**Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)** ..... 434
OFF Button ..... 435
Off Indicator ..... 101
System Indicator ..... 101
**Viscosity (Oil)** ..... 553, 645
**VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)** ..... 434

## W

**Wallpaper** ..... 321
**Warning Indicator On/Blinking** ..... 621
**Warning Labels** ..... 90
**Warnings** ..... 130, 162
**Watts** ..... 645
**Wear Indicators (Tyre)** ..... 576
**Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)** ..... 604
**Wi-Fi Connection** ..... 345
**Window Washers** ..... 205
Adding/Refilling Fluid ..... 562
Switch ..... 205
**Windows (Opening and Closing)** ..... 187
**Windscreen** ..... 205
Cleaning ..... 590, 593
Defrosting/Defogging ..... 207, 241
Washer Fluid ..... 562
Wiper Blades ..... 573
Wipers and Washers ..... 205
**Winter Tyres** ..... 580
Tyre Chains ..... 580
**Wipers and Washers** ..... 205
Automatic Intermittent Wipers ..... 206
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades ..... 573
**Wireless Charger** ..... 233
**WMA** ..... 259, 338
**Worn Tyres** ..... 575